

## European Committee for Food Contact Materials and Articles (Partial Agreement) (CD-P-MCA)

### Technical Guide on Metals and Alloys used in food contact materials and articles, 2<sup>nd</sup> edition

Draft for public consultation of stakeholders

**Consultation period: 21 March – 29 April 2022**

Feedback and comments further to revisions made to the draft second edition are welcome for the duration of the consultation.

How to participate:

1. Download the [Excel submission form here](#) and save a local copy.
2. Fill in contact details, as needed.
3. Select section range/line numbers, where applicable; enter comments and suggested texts.
4. Save the completed Excel file.
5. Send as attachment by e-mail to: [fcm.metals\\_alloys@edqm.eu](mailto:fcm.metals_alloys@edqm.eu).
6. Deadline for comments by e-mail: 29 April 2022.

*Please note: comments submitted in any other format will not be treated.*

EDQM will not publish all comments received but reserves the right to publish or otherwise make public the conclusions of this consultation. Name and affiliation details submitted may be disclosed to mandated reviewers. Submissions without name or other details will be treated anonymously. Personal data will be stored for 2 years by the EDQM.

### Consultation assessment

The EDQM Secretariat shall support the CD-P-MCA in the review of consultation feedback and recommendations of due follow-up, with a view to the release of a completely revised 2<sup>nd</sup> edition.

### Outcome

Follow the [work programme of the CD-P-MCA](#) for further information.

# Technical Guide on Metals and Alloys used in food contact materials and articles, a practical guide for manufacturers and regulators, *second edition*

## Table of contents

Foreword .....	4
Acknowledgements [ <i>text to follow on publication</i> ] .....	5
Council of Europe Resolution CM/Res(2020)9 on food contact materials and articles [ <i>texts closed for consultation</i> ].....	5
Abbreviations used in the Technical guide .....	5
Chapter 1 - General provisions and specific release limits (SRLs) for metals .....	8
Introduction.....	8
Objectives.....	8
Involvement of national experts and stakeholders.....	8
Legal status of the technical guide and link with the European Union.....	9
Definitions, scope and Specific Release Limits (SRL).....	9
Chapter 2 - Safety review and recommendations.....	16
Metals and alloy components .....	16
Aluminium (Al).....	16
Antimony (Sb).....	23
Chromium (Cr).....	25
Cobalt (Co).....	31
Copper (Cu).....	33
Iron (Fe) .....	36
Magnesium (Mg) .....	40
Manganese (Mn) .....	42
Molybdenum (Mo) .....	47
Nickel (Ni) .....	51
Silver (Ag).....	57
Tin (Sn).....	61
Titanium (Ti) .....	66
Vanadium (V).....	68
Zinc (Zn) .....	71
Zirconium (Zr) .....	74

Metal contaminants and impurities .....	77
Arsenic (As).....	78
Barium (Ba).....	80
Beryllium (Be) .....	83
Cadmium (Cd).....	85
Lead (Pb).....	89
Lithium (Li).....	93
Mercury (Hg) .....	95
Thallium (Tl).....	99
Stainless steel and other alloys .....	102
Alloys .....	102
Stainless steels .....	105
Bibliography.....	110
Chapter 3 - Release testing of food contact materials and articles made from metals and alloys ....	113
Criteria for the choice of test procedure.....	113
Testing release from materials and articles into foodstuffs .....	113
Testing release from materials and articles into food simulants .....	114
Sampling of materials and articles .....	115
Pre-treatment of materials and articles.....	116
Release testing into foodstuffs.....	116
Release testing into food simulants .....	118
Methods of analysis .....	121
Measurements and reporting .....	123
Calculation of specific release (SR).....	124
References.....	126
Annex I: Methods for measurement of articles that cannot be filled.....	127
Annex II: Correction factor applied when comparing release test results for cutlery made from silver or silver-plated cutlery with release limits for silver .....	133

## 1 **Foreword**

2 Supplementing Council of Europe Resolution CM/Res(2020)9, this technical guide is intended  
3 to ensure the safety and suitable quality of food contact materials and articles made from metals and  
4 alloys. Chemical elements are described that constitute metallic food contact articles or may be  
5 present as impurities and specific release limits (SRLs) have been set for those elements, where  
6 appropriate.

7 Information presented in this guide

8 – Resolution CM/Res(2020)9 on food contact materials and articles, defining Guiding Principles  
9 applicable to food contact materials not yet harmonised by European material-specific  
10 measures, such as coatings, paper and board and metals

11 – Chapter 1: Definitions, scope and Specific Release Limits (SRL) for metals

12 – Chapter 2: Safety review and recommendations

13 – Chapter 3: Analytical methods for release testing of food contact materials and articles made  
14 from metals and alloys

15 The guiding principles and technical recommendations are intended to assist national policy  
16 makers and to enhance the harmonisation of technical standards across Europe.

17 The European Committee for Food Contact Materials and Articles (CD-P-MCA) entirely  
18 reviewed the 1<sup>st</sup> edition of this Technical Guide and prepared the present document.

19 This revision was triggered by the adoption of Resolution CM/Res(2020)9 and takes into account  
20 scientific opinions of the European Food Safety Authority (EFSA) issued since 2013 as well as relevant  
21 publications by national risk assessment bodies (such as BfR, ANSES). The review of safety data has  
22 resulted in the following changes:

- 23 - Chromium: the Specific Release Limit (SRL) is set at 1 mg/kg (former limit: 0.250 mg/kg)
- 24 - Manganese: the SRL is set at 0.55 mg/kg (former limit: 1.8 mg/kg)
- 25 - Thallium: the SRL was corrected to 0.001 mg/kg (former limit: 0.0001 mg/kg)

26 A new section on zirconium has been added and the SRL is set at 2 mg/kg.

27 Guidance on release testing has been updated to ensure coherence with the 2020 Guidelines for  
28 testing conditions for kitchenware made from metals and alloys.

29 The chapter on the declaration of compliance of the 1<sup>st</sup> edition was omitted in the 2<sup>nd</sup> edition in view  
30 of the corresponding guiding principles stated in the annex of Resolution CM/Res(2020)9, section 8.2.

31 **Acknowledgements** ***[text to follow on publication]***

32 **Council of Europe Resolution CM/Res(2020)9 on food contact**  
33 **materials and articles** ***[texts closed for consultation]***

34 **Abbreviations used in the Technical guide**

35 ADI Acceptable Daily Intake

36 AFNOR Association Française de Normalisation

37 AFSSAPS French Agency for the Safety of Health Products

38 ANSES/AFSSA French Agency for Food, Environmental and Occupational Health& Safety  
39 (AFSSA former acronym)

40 ALARA As Low As Reasonably Achievable

41 BfR Federal Institute for Risk Assessment (Germany)

42 BMD Benchmark dose

43 CD-P-MCA European Committee for Food Contact Materials and Articles

44 CoE Council of Europe

45 COT Committee on Toxicity of Chemicals in Food, Consumer Products and the Environment

46 DGCCRF Directorate for Competition policy, Consumers affairs and Fraud control (Ministry of  
47 Economy and Finances, France)

48 EFSA European Food Safety Authority

49 EMA /EMEA European Medicines Agency (EMEA previous acronym)

50 EPA Environmental Protection Agency (USA)

51 EVM UK Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals

52 FAO United Nations Food and Agriculture Organisation

53 FCM Food Contact Material(s)

54 FSA Food Standards Agency (UK)

55 GMP Good Manufacturing Practice

56 ICH, international conference on harmonisation of technical requirements for registration of  
57 pharmaceuticals for human use

58 IPCS INCHEM International Programme on Chemical Safety – Chemical Safety Information from  
59 Intergovernmental Organisations

60 JECFA Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives

61 LOAEL Lowest Observed Adverse Effect Level

62 NOAEL No Observed Adverse Effect Level

63	PDE Permitted Daily Exposure (as used in the ICH Guideline on elemental impurities, ICH Q3D)
64	PMTDI Provisional Maximum Tolerable Daily Intake
65	P-SC-EMB Committee of Experts on Packaging Materials for Food and Pharmaceutical Products
66	PTMI Provisional Tolerable Monthly Intake
67	PTWI Provisional Tolerable Weekly Intake
68	QM Maximum permitted Quantity of a substance in a food contact material
69	RASFF Rapid Alert System for Food and Feed
70	RDI Recommended Daily Intake
71	RfD Reference Dose (established by EPA – maximum acceptable oral dose of a toxic substance
72	derived from the NOAEL)
73	RIVM National Institute for Public Health and the Environment (Netherlands)
74	SCF EU Scientific Committee on Food
75	SR Specific Release
76	SRL Specific Release Limit
77	SML Specific Migration Limit
78	SML (T) Specific Migration Limit (expressed as total of moiety or substances indicated)
79	TDI Tolerable Daily Intake
80	TWI Tolerable Weekly Intake
81	WHO World Health Organisation

# **CHAPTER 1**

Draft for consultation

82 **Chapter 1 - General provisions and specific release limits**  
83 **(SRLs) for metals**

84 **Introduction**

85 Metals and alloys are used in food contact materials and articles in food-processing  
86 equipment, containers and household utensils as well as in foil used to wrap food. These materials are  
87 frequently used as a safety barrier between the food and the environment. They are often covered by  
88 a coating to reduce ion release into foods.

89 Metal ions can be released from materials into food and may endanger the health of the  
90 consumer if the intake exceeds the toxicological reference value, or may unacceptably alter the  
91 composition of the food or its organoleptic characteristics. Consequently, it was decided to establish  
92 technical guidance in this area.

93 **Objectives**

94 The Technical guide on metals and alloys used in food contact materials and articles  
95 supplements the guiding principles stated in Resolution CM/Res(2020)9. It is not legally binding and is  
96 intended to assist national regulators when preparing or updating legal provisions on food contact  
97 materials made from metals and alloys, with a view to harmonising regulations and enforcement  
98 activities at the European level.

99 Safety reviews of single metals and the restrictions defined for metals and alloys used in food  
100 contact materials and articles are updated regularly to keep up with scientific and technical progress.

101 Practical recommendations for release testing and checking compliance with the applicable  
102 restrictions provide support to manufacturers, importers and control laboratories.

103 **Involvement of national experts and stakeholders**

104 Governments of Council of Europe member states<sup>1</sup> participated actively in the elaboration of  
105 the updated documentation. Their representatives in the European Committee for Food Contact  
106 Materials and Articles (CD-P-MCA) are experts in the area of food contact materials or responsible for  
107 the implementation of government policies in their national ministries.

108 Whereas Resolution CM/Res(2020)9 was approved by the Council of Europe's Committee of  
109 Ministers, the technical guide has not been submitted for approval in view of its technical nature and  
110 the need for timely updates.

---

<sup>1</sup> Albania, Austria, Belgium, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Montenegro, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Republic of Moldova, Romania, Serbia, Slovak Republic, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, North Macedonia, Turkey, Ukraine and United Kingdom.

111 The European Commission (EC), the EC's Joint Research Centre (JRC) and the European Food  
112 Safety Authority (EFSA) participate in the work of the CD-P-MCA.

113 Experts from national authorities, the JRC, industry, private testing laboratories and other  
114 stakeholders share their knowledge and expertise and contribute in the updating of this technical  
115 guide as members of the ad hoc groups in the field of metals and alloys.

116 The draft revised Technical guide was subject to further consultations with relevant  
117 professional associations and industry representatives.

## 118 **Legal status of the technical guide and link with the European** 119 **Union**

120 The Council of Europe technical guides are not legally binding for member states, but serve as  
121 a reference for the implementation of Article 3 paragraph 1 of Regulation (EC) No. 1935/2004, where  
122 applicable. The member states may include reference to these guides in national provisions or  
123 transpose the text into national law.

## 124 **Definitions, scope and Specific Release Limits (SRL)**

### 125 **1. Definitions**

126 The definitions of the resolution apply in the context of this Technical Guide.

127 In addition, the following definitions apply:

#### 128 1.1. Metals

129 Metals are characterised by their chemical and physical properties in the solid state:

- 130 – reflectivity, which is responsible for the characteristic metallic lustre;
- 131 – electrical conductivity, which decreases with increasing temperature;
- 132 – thermal conductivity;
- 133 – mechanical properties, such as strength and ductility.

134 Metals are the class of materials linked, on an atomic scale, by metallic bonds. They can be considered  
135 an array of positive metallic ions forming long-range crystal lattices in which valency electrons are  
136 commonly shared throughout the structure.

#### 137 1.2. Alloys

138 An alloy is a metallic material composed of two or more elements. Alloys are homogeneous at a  
139 macroscopic scale and their components cannot be separated by mechanical means.

#### 140 1.3. Release

141 Release is defined herein as the unintentional transfer to food of metal ions from food contact  
142 materials and articles made of metal or alloy.

## 143 2. Scope

### 144 2.1. Included in the scope

145 The provisions laid down in this chapter apply to the unintentional release of certain metal ions from  
146 materials and articles at the end-use level, coated or uncoated, made completely or partially of metals  
147 and alloys, manufactured or imported into Europe, which in their finished state:

148 a. are intended to be brought into contact with food; or

149 b. are already in contact with food and were intended for that purpose; or

150 c. can reasonably be expected to be brought into contact with food or to transfer their constituents to  
151 food under normal or foreseeable conditions of use.

152 **Examples:** *household utensils, kitchen appliances and industrial processing equipment such as food*  
153 *processors, wrapping, containers, pots, blenders, knives, forks, spoons, etc.*

### 154 2.2. Excluded from the scope

155 These provisions do not apply to:

156 a. metals and alloys used in food contact materials and articles that are covered by an organic surface  
157 coating that has been demonstrated to restrict release of metal ions to less than the applicable specific  
158 release limit (SRL);

159 b. ceramics, enamels, crystal glass, printing inks, polymerisation aids and other types of food contact  
160 materials, which are either covered by specific legislation in the EU or at national level or by Council of  
161 Europe resolutions;

162 c. food contact materials that were designed to release certain substances into the food (so-called  
163 “active food contact materials”); such materials have been addressed in EU legislation on active food  
164 contact materials [Regulation (EC) No. 1935/2004 and Regulation (EC) No. 450/2009].

165 Contribution to the total intake of metal ions due to other sources of exposure than metals and alloys  
166 used in food contact materials and articles are taken into consideration by applying allocation factors,  
167 where appropriate, when deriving specific release limits (SRLs).

## 168 3. Labelling

169 In addition to the requirements in Article 5 of Resolution CM/Res(2020)9, manufacturers of metallic  
170 food contact materials and articles should provide information on the composition as applicable (e.g.  
171 when the content of impurities has been restricted) and their use to reduce the risk for unintentional  
172 release.

173 Temperature and storage time are known to influence the release of metal ions from metals and alloys  
174 used in food contact materials and articles into certain types of foodstuff. Thus, labelling could be used  
175 to highlight restrictions for the storage and processing of strongly acidic, alkaline or salted foodstuffs

176 to minimise the phenomenon of corrosion. The labelling could also include guidance on the storage  
177 temperature of foods in order to minimise release. However, producers shall take the foreseeable use  
178 by consumers into account and therefore they should consult the guidelines on *Testing conditions for*  
179 *kitchenware articles in contact with food stuffs: Plastics, Metals, Silicone & Rubber*<sup>2</sup> or its revisions.

180 The labelling could, for example, states:

- 181 – “User information: do not use this equipment with acidic or alkaline or salted foodstuffs”; or
- 182 – “Exclusively for use with non-acidic foodstuffs stored in refrigerators”; or
- 183 – “Keep below 5 °C if the food is to be stored for longer than 24 hours”.

184 If users must initially wash the material, then the labelling should provide appropriate cleaning and  
185 care instructions.

186 **Remarks:** *It should be recognised that industrial use and household use of food contact materials may*  
187 *vary extensively.*

188 *An industrial environment usually implies:*

- 189 – *in-process controls;*
- 190 – *repeated use of the same equipment according to standard conditions;*
- 191 – *selection and qualification of the food contact material (equipment or packaging) for a given range*  
192 *of foodstuffs and its use;*
- 193 – *possible liability of the manufacturer in case of harm to consumers.*

194 *Household use usually implies:*

- 195 – *a wide range of foodstuffs and contact conditions;*
- 196 – *uncontrolled use of utensils limited only by concepts such as “current practice” or reasonably*  
197 *foreseeable use conditions.*

## 198 4. Specific release limits (SRLs)

199 Food contact materials and articles within the scope of this Technical Guide comply with the specific  
200 release limits (SRLs) set out below in Table 1 and Table 2. SRLs are expressed in mg/kg food.

201 **Table 1** – *SRLs for metals and alloy components*

Symbol	Name	SRL [mg/kg food]
Al	Aluminium	5
Sb	Antimony	0.04
Cr	Chromium (III)	1*

<sup>2</sup> Beldi G., Senaldi C., Robouch P. and Hoekstra E. (2021), [Testing conditions for kitchenware articles in contact with foodstuffs: Plastics, Metals, Silicone and Rubber](#). European Commission, Ispra, JRC125894.

Co	Cobalt	0.02
Cu	Copper	4
Fe	Iron	40
Mg	Magnesium	–
Mn	Manganese	0.55
Mo	Molybdenum	0.12
Ni	Nickel	0.14
Ag	Silver	0.08**
Sn	Tin	100***
Ti	Titanium	–****
V	Vanadium	0.01
Zn	Zinc	5
Zr	Zirconium	2

202 \* For chromium (VI), check Chapter 2, section on chromium.

203 \*\* Check also Chapter 3, Annex II for the possibility of applying a reduction factor assessing  
204 compliance of cutlery made from silver and silver-plated cutlery.

205 \*\*\* Except in field of application under Regulation (EC) No. 1881/2006.

206 \*\*\*\* The generic specific release limit of 60 mg/kg food is not applicable.

207 **Table 2 – SRLs for metals as contaminants and impurities**

Symbol	Name	SRL [mg/kg food]
As	Arsenic	0.002
Ba	Barium	1.2
Be	Beryllium	0.01
Cd	Cadmium	0.005
Pb	Lead	0.010*
Li	Lithium	0.048
Hg	Mercury	0.003
Tl	Thallium	0.001

208 \* Not applicable to tinfoil steel sheet used as packaging for foodstuffs for which a maximum  
209 level of lead is set in Regulation (EC) No. 1881/2006, provided that the tin that is used meets the  
210 following specification: lead content: not more than 0.01%.

211 **Remarks:**

212 *In the cases of antimony, cobalt, chromium, molybdenum, nickel, vanadium as well as the*  
213 *contaminants arsenic, beryllium, mercury and thallium, deviation from the SRL is tolerated due to*  
214 *analytical limitations, subject to the approval by the competent authority.*

215 *In the case of cadmium and lead, deviation from the SRL may be tolerated for certain applications,*  
216 *subject to the approval by the competent authority. However, the ALARA<sup>3</sup> principle should be applied.*

217 **Establishing an SRL:**

218 *Toxicological information, the ALARA principle where appropriate or relevant legislation is considered.*  
219 *Each metal ion requires a specific approach for setting an SRL, avoiding either over-conservative specific*  
220 *release limits or limits where compliance would not be possible.*

221 The following criteria are also considered when defining a specific release limit:

- 222 – appropriate toxicological reference values, (e.g. JECFA, EFSA or national risk assessment bodies);
- 223 – appropriate exposure assessments, based on oral intake data from food, drinking water and other  
224 sources from several European countries;
- 225 – allowances for food contact materials as one possible source for the human exposure (next to food  
226 and dietary supplements): expressed as percentage of the toxicological reference value;
- 227 – actual release data: rather than setting an SRL on the basis of toxicological reference values, actual  
228 release data may serve to define technically lowest feasible levels (ALARA) and levels usually achieved  
229 with GMP;
- 230 – any regulations governing the presence of metal ions in foodstuffs must be taken into consideration  
231 to avoid conflicts between standards.

232 Based on the above criteria, the following model approach was used to set SRL for metals used in food  
233 contact materials:

234 Criterion 1: appropriate toxicological reference values exist and oral intake data of sufficient quality  
235 are available.

236 Calculation of the SRL:

237 (i) For oral intake data of sufficient quality not exceeding the toxicological limit: based on the  
238 toxicological reference value and a variable, justified allowance in the case of a gap between worst-  
239 case oral intake (95<sup>th</sup> percentile) and the toxicological reference value;

240 **Examples in this guide:** *Cu, Mo, Zn.*

241 (ii) For oral intake data of sufficient quality exceeding the toxicological limit: based on the ALARA  
242 principle;

243 **Example in this guide:** *Al.*

244 Criterion 2: appropriate toxicological reference values exist, but insufficient or no oral intake data are  
245 available.

---

<sup>3</sup> ALARA is an acronym for “As Low As Reasonably Achievable”. The term “ALARA principle” is used in reference to chemical or radiation exposure levels where social, technical, economic, practical, or public policy considerations seek to achieve a small but acceptable level of risk.

246 Calculation of the SRL: based on the toxicological reference value and a fixed allowance of 20%, which  
247 is in agreement with the WHO “Drinking Water Guidelines” (WHO, 2017)<sup>4</sup>.

248 **Examples in this guide:** *Co and Ni*.

249 Criterion 3: appropriate toxicological reference values do not exist, but oral intake data are available.

250 Calculation of the SRL:

251 (i) based solely on appropriate oral intake data; as no toxicologically derived limit exists, no allowance  
252 can be applied.

253 **Examples in this guide:** *Ag and V*.

254 (ii) for varying oral intake data; as no toxicologically derived limit exists, based on the ALARA principle;

255 **Example in this guide:** *Fe*.

256 Criterion 4: Metals without an SRL.

257 Setting SRLs for Mg and Ti was not considered necessary.

258 Criterion 5: metals and metalloids considered as impurities.

259 Calculation of the SRL: based on a fixed allowance of 10% of the toxicological reference values is  
260 applied independently of oral intake data with the exception of Cd (25% allowance) and Pb (26%  
261 allowance).

262 **Examples in this guide:** *As, Ba, Be, Cd, Hg, Li, Pb and Tl*.

263 Criterion 6: appropriate toxicological reference values exist, actual release data show much lower  
264 release when using good manufacturing practice.

265 In order to ensure the use of GMP a lower release limit was chosen.

266 **Example in this guide:** *Cr*.

## 267 **Updating of the Technical Guide and further provisions or guidance**

268 When updating this Technical Guide the technical specifications for metals and alloys defined in  
269 International (ISO) and European standards (CEN) should also be taken into account, as well as national  
270 legislation on the composition of metals and alloys.

---

<sup>4</sup> Guidelines for drinking-water quality: fourth edition incorporating the first addendum. ISBN 978-92-4-154995-0, © World Health Organization 2017. Available at <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>.

## **CHAPTER 2**

Draft for consultation

## 271 **Chapter 2 - Safety review and recommendations**

### 272 **Metals and alloy components**

273 The following metals are relevant metals and alloy components used in food contact materials and  
274 articles.

275 Aluminium (Al)

276 Antimony (Sb)

277 Chromium (Cr)

278 Cobalt (Co)

279 Copper (Cu)

280 Iron (Fe)

281 Magnesium (Mg)

282 Manganese (Mn)

283 Molybdenum (Mo)

284 Nickel (Ni)

285 Silver (Ag)

286 Tin (Sn)

287 Titanium (Ti)

288 Vanadium (V)

289 Zinc (Zn)

290 Zirconium (Zr)

### 291 **Aluminium (Al)**

292 Aluminium is the third most abundant element in the Earth's crust and is widespread in minerals.  
293 Aluminium does not occur in nature in a free element state because of its reactive nature (Beliles,  
294 1994). Many of its naturally occurring compounds are insoluble at neutral pH and thus concentrations  
295 of the element in both fresh and sea water are usually low, less than 0.1 mg/L. Inorganic compounds  
296 of aluminium normally contain Al(III). Pure aluminium has good working and forming properties and  
297 high ductility, its mechanical strength being low. Therefore, aluminium is often used in alloys (Beliles,  
298 1994).

### 299 **Sources and levels of intake**

300 The main source of aluminium is the naturally occurring content in foodstuffs. Mean aluminium  
301 content in unprocessed foodstuffs ranges from around or less than 1 mg/kg in eggs, fats and oils, fruits,  
302 vegetables or juices to around 5 mg/kg in tea (Kolbaum et al., 2019; Tietz et al., 2019; AGES, 2017;

303 EFSA, 2008). Exceptionally high aluminium content was found in spices, mussels, nuts, legumes and  
304 oilseeds (around 30 – 244 mg/kg with highest content in spices). Due to procession or usage of  
305 aluminium-containing food additives, aluminium content of processed foodstuffs can be higher than  
306 for the respective raw products (e.g for bitter chocolate, sugar, confectionary coffee, cocoa and tea  
307 infusions (Kolbaum et al., 2019; Tietz et al., 2019). It should be noted, that in the EU the use of  
308 aluminium and its salts as a food additive is regulated in Regulation (EC) No 1333/2008 and strictly  
309 related to a limited number of applications such as scones and aluminium decoration in confectionery.

310 Mean dietary exposure from water and food in non-occupational exposed adults showed large  
311 variations between the different countries and, within a country, between different surveys. In studies  
312 from the late 1990s and early 2000s as summarised in EFSA (2008), it ranged from 0.2 to 1.5 mg/kg  
313 body weight/week. In children, estimated exposure at the 97.5th percentile ranged from 0.7 and 1.7  
314 mg/kg body weight/week. In recent studies the estimated weekly intake was lower: ANSES (2011)  
315 estimated a weekly aluminium intake for adults from food of 0.28 – 0.49 mg/kg body weight/week  
316 (mean – 95<sup>th</sup> percentile), and for children (3 – 14 years) of 0.44 – 0.83 mg/kg body weight/week. ANSES  
317 (2016) estimated a weekly intake for infants (0 – 3 years) from food of 0.21 – 0.62 mg/kg body  
318 weight/week (mean – 90<sup>th</sup> percentile). Estimated exposure of Austrian infants (0 – 6 months) fed with  
319 infant formula was in the same range (AGES, 2017). Kolbaum et al. (2019) and Tietz et al. (2019)  
320 estimated the weekly aluminium intake of German adults from food to 0.18 – 0.44 mg/kg body  
321 weight/week (mean – 95<sup>th</sup> percentile). Food groups with the highest impact on overall aluminium  
322 uptake were instant tea and tea beverages, vegetables and salads, bitter chocolate, cereals and cereal  
323 products like bread and rolls (Kolbaum et al., 2019; Tietz et al., 2019; ANSES, 2011). However, the main  
324 food groups accounted for only ca. one third of the overall aluminium intake. Contributors to the  
325 remaining two thirds of the overall intake are diversely distributed among food groups and cannot be  
326 assigned to a specific consumption pattern (Kolbaum et al., 2019; Tietz et al., 2019).

327 Significant non-dietary sources of exposure to aluminium can be medicines (e.g. antacids or buffered  
328 aspirins) (Krewski et al., 2007) and cosmetics via oral and dermal route (e.g. antiperspirants) (AFSSAPS,  
329 2011; Tietz et al. 2019). However, recent studies showed, that the dermal uptake of aluminium and  
330 its salts may be significantly lower than estimated from earlier studies (SCCS, 2020)

## 331 **Metallic food contact materials**

332 Aluminium is widely used in food contact materials such as saucepans, aluminium-lined cooking  
333 utensils, coffee pots, and in packaging products such as food trays, cans and can closures (Elinder and  
334 Sjögren, 1986). Aluminium food contact materials are often coated with a resin-based coating.  
335 Aluminium alloys for food contact materials may contain alloying elements such as magnesium,  
336 silicon, iron, manganese, copper and zinc (European Standard EN 601; European Standard EN 602).

## 337 **Other food contact materials**

338 Certain aluminium compounds are used in pigments (Elinder and Sjögren, 1986).

## 339 Release

340 Aluminium and its various alloys are highly resistant to corrosion (Beliles, 1994). When exposed to  
341 air, the metal almost immediately develops a thin film of Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>. The reaction then slows because this  
342 film seals off oxygen, preventing further oxidation or chemical reaction. The film is colourless, tough  
343 and non-flaking. Few chemicals can dissolve it (Beliles, 1994).

344 Aluminium reacts with acids. Pure aluminium is attacked by most dilute mineral acids. At neutral pH,  
345 aluminium hydroxide has limited solubility. However, solubility increases markedly at pH below 4.5  
346 and above 8.5 (Elinder and Sjögren, 1986). Alkalis rapidly attack both pure and impure aluminium and  
347 dissolve the metal (Hughes, 1992). Therefore, aluminium can be released from uncoated surfaces in  
348 contact with foodstuffs. Furthermore, aluminium can be released from coated food contact materials  
349 if the coating does not act as a functional barrier. Release of aluminium from food contact materials  
350 depends to a large extent on the pH of the foodstuffs. High salt concentrations (over 3.5% NaCl) can  
351 also increase ion release. Use of aluminium saucepans and aluminium-lined cooking utensils and  
352 containers may increase the content of aluminium in certain types of foodstuffs, especially during  
353 long-term storage of strongly acidic, alkaline or salty foodstuffs. In general, cooking in aluminium  
354 vessels increased the content in the foodstuffs by less than 1 mg/kg for about half of foodstuffs, and  
355 less than 10 mg/kg for 85% of the foodstuffs examined by Pennington and Jones (1989). Boiling tap  
356 water in an aluminium pan for 10 or 15 minutes can result in aluminium release of up to 1.5 mg/L,  
357 depending on the acidity of the water and the chemical composition of the aluminium utensils  
358 (Gramiccioni et al., 1996; Müller et al., 1993; Mei et al., 1993; Nagy et al., 1994) but values up to 5 mg/L  
359 have been reported in one study (Liukkonen-Lilja and Piepponen, 1992). Acidic foodstuffs such as  
360 tomatoes, cabbage, rhubarb and many soft fruits most frequently take up more aluminium from  
361 containers (Hughes, 1992). While acids give the highest figures, alkaline foodstuffs (less common) and  
362 foodstuffs with much added salt also increase aluminium uptake (Hughes, 1992; Gramiccioni et al.,  
363 1996).

364 Temperature and storage time are known to influence the release of aluminium into foodstuffs. In a  
365 release study using 3% acetic acid, the release was approximately 10-fold higher at 40 °C compared to  
366 5 °C after 24 hours (Gramiccioni et al., 1989). Typical values for release of aluminium from foil was  
367 <0.05 mg/dm<sup>2</sup> at 5 °C and, correspondingly, 6 mg/dm<sup>2</sup> at 40 °C. However, after 10 days, the release  
368 was considerably higher: 0.5 mg/dm<sup>2</sup> at 5 °C compared to 96 mg/dm<sup>2</sup> at 40 °C (Gramiccioni et al.,  
369 1989). Baking different types of meat wrapped in aluminium foil showed an increased aluminium  
370 release compared to raw meat up to 5-fold depending on the temperature (up to 17.2 mg Al/kg wet  
371 weight) (Turhan, 2006).

372 Combined effects of high temperatures during baking or grilling and salt/low pH (addition of vinegar)  
373 on aluminium release were demonstrated by baking fish in aluminium foil. Baking the fish without any  
374 addition of salt and vinegar led to increased aluminium content up to 4-fold (up to 0.4 mg Al/kg wet  
375 weight) compared to the raw fish. When salt and vinegar were added, the aluminium content was  
376 increased up to 68-fold (up to 5 mg Al/kg wet weight) (Ranau et al., 2001).

377 Sander et al. (2018) showed aluminium release of up to 20 mg/kg from uncoated aluminium menu  
378 trays into sauerkraut juice, tomato puree and applesauce, during cook & chill process.

## 379 Safety aspects

380 – In 1988, the JECFA established a PTWI at 7 mg/kg body weight/week for total aluminium  
381 intake, including food additive uses of aluminium salts, which was subsequently lowered to 1 mg/kg  
382 body weight/week in 2006 (JECFA, 1989, 2006). In the light of new data, JECFA reassessed aluminium  
383 in 2011 and introduced a new PTWI of 2 mg/kg body weight/week based on a NOAEL of 30 mg/kg  
384 body weight/day and an uncertainty factor of 100 (JECFA, 2012).

385 The Scientific Committee on Consumer Safety (SCCS) agreed on the NOAEL of 30 mg/kg  
386 bw/day used by JECFA for risk assessment (SCCS, 2020)

387 In 2017, the Scientific Committee on Health, Environmental and Emerging Risks (SCHEER,  
388 2017) published an opinion on tolerable intake of aluminium with regard to adapting the migration  
389 limits for aluminium in toys. SCHEER established a TDI of 0.3 mg/kg body weight based on the same  
390 NOAEL of 30 mg/kg body weight per day.

391 – WHO states that “a health-based value of 0.9 mg/L could be derived from the JECFA PTWI  
392 (2006), but this value exceeds practicable levels based on optimisation of the coagulation process in  
393 drinking-water plants using aluminium-based coagulants” (WHO, 2017).

394 – Directive 2020/2184/EC on the quality of water intended for human consumption gives a  
395 standard value of 0.2 mg/L for water for human consumption as a compromise between the practical  
396 use of aluminium salts in drinking water treatment and discolouration of distributed water.

397 – Only a small amount of ingested aluminium is absorbed (mean 0.1% according to EFSA 2008).  
398 After absorption, aluminium is mainly (80 - 90%) (Priest, 1995) excreted via urine. Unexcreted  
399 aluminium is distributed into all tissues, accumulation takes place especially in the bones, muscles,  
400 kidney and brain (COT, 2013; EFSA, 2008; JECFA, 2012). However, soluble aluminium salts are more  
401 easily absorbed. Patients with impaired renal function treated by dialysis could show a higher  
402 aluminium blood level. In the past, some of these dialysis patients have shown neurological symptoms  
403 of aluminium intoxication due to an inappropriate treatment that is no longer used; these symptoms  
404 were sometimes mistaken for those of Alzheimer’s disease. The WHO (IPCS, 1997) concluded that a  
405 causal relationship between aluminium intake and Alzheimer’s disease could not be inferred by these  
406 studies.

407 – In 2008, EFSA (2008) confirmed the PTWI of 1 mg/kg body weight/week previously  
408 established by JECFA in 2006. In 2018, EFSA reviewed new toxicological evidence but not with the aim  
409 of revising the healthbased guidance value for aluminium set by EFSA in 2008 (EFSA, 2018).

## 410 Conclusions and recommendations

411 “the SRL for aluminium of 5 mg/kg is reasonably achievable”

412 In the case of aluminium, exposure of certain groups of the population is close to or exceeds the PTWI  
413 derived by JECFA (2012) of 2 mg/kg body weight/week (Tietz et al., 2019) and the TDI of 0.3 mg/kg  
414 body weight per day accepted by SCHEER (SCHEER, 2017). Certain food contact materials and articles  
415 contribute to the dietary intake of aluminium. Therefore, it is recommended that the specific release

416 limit for aluminium be set at a level that is as low as reasonably achievable (ALARA). Such an approach  
417 ensures that the manufacturer apply measures to prevent and reduce the release of aluminium from  
418 food contact materials and articles as far as possible in order to protect public health.

419 Data provided by industry and member states show that the SRL of 5 mg/kg is reasonably achievable  
420 at present.

421 This specific release limit should be subject to regular review to take account of the advance of  
422 scientific and technical knowledge and improvements in good manufacturing practice.

423 Based on the current state of the art and available release data from uncoated aluminium FCM (Milana  
424 et al., 2019), it is considered necessary to limit the categories of food that may be in contact with  
425 uncoated aluminium articles and to introduce adequate labelling for users (Regulation (EC) No  
426 1935/2004, Art.15)

427 It should be noted that food contact materials and articles made from aluminium coming into contact  
428 with food must comply with the following additional recommendations:

429 – Contact with acidic (e.g. fruit juices), alkaline (e.g. lye dough products) or salty, liquid  
430 foodstuffs in uncoated aluminium utensils should be limited in order to minimise release.

431 – The producer should provide specific labelling for users of aluminium materials or articles  
432 not coated with a protective coating. With regard to retail packs, the suppliers must ensure that these  
433 are labelled with appropriate information for the end consumer. The labelling should include the  
434 following (or equivalent) icon



435

436 and the following statement: **DO NOT USE WITH:** ACIDIC FOOD (e.g. peeled fruit, tomatoes, pickles,  
437 salad dressing) - SALTY FOOD (e.g. pretzel, white herring, cured meat)

## 438 **References**

439 AFSSAPS (2011). Assessment of the risks of using aluminium in cosmetic products. Available at  
440 <https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-/publication/33b1b08c-4206-4c1a-8ce0-1fa65d048551>

441 AGES (2017): Aluminium in Lebensmitteln und anderen verbrauchernahen Produkten.  
442 Österreichische Agentur für Gesundheit und Ernährungssicherheit GmbH, Wien, Österreich. Available  
443 at

444 [https://www.ages.at/download/0/0/f36527a3b4b7b3060950f1f0378cd14410daa93a/fileadmin/AGE](https://www.ages.at/download/0/0/f36527a3b4b7b3060950f1f0378cd14410daa93a/fileadmin/AGE_S2015/Wissen-Aktuell/Themenberichte/Aluminium_Wissen_aktuell.pdf)  
445 [S2015/Wissen-Aktuell/Themenberichte/Aluminium\\_Wissen\\_aktuell.pdf](https://www.ages.at/download/0/0/f36527a3b4b7b3060950f1f0378cd14410daa93a/fileadmin/AGE_S2015/Wissen-Aktuell/Themenberichte/Aluminium_Wissen_aktuell.pdf)

- 446 ANSES (2011): Second French total diet study (TDS 2) - Report 1, inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
447 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens. French agency for food, environmental  
448 and occupational health and safety. Available at  
449 <https://www.anses.fr/en/system/files/PASER2006sa0361Ra1EN.pdf>
- 450 ANSES (2016): Infant Total Diet Study (iTDS) - Tome 2 - Partie 2, Composés inorganiques. French  
451 Agency for Food, Environmental and Occupational Health & Safety. Available at  
452 <https://www.anses.fr/en/content/infant-total-diet-study-itds>
- 453 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, Fourth edition, Volume  
454 2, Part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
- 455 COT (2008). COT Statement on the 2006 UK Total Diet Study of Metals and Other Elements. Available  
456 at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/cot/cotstatementtlds200808.pdf>
- 457 COT (2013): Statement on the potential risks from aluminium in the infant diet. Committee on toxicity  
458 of chemicals in food, consumer products and the environment (COT). Available at  
459 <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/cot/statealuminium.pdf>
- 460 Directive (EU) 2020/2184 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 December 2020 on the  
461 quality of water intended for human consumption. OJ L 435, 23.12.2020, p. 1.
- 462 EFSA (2008). Safety of aluminium from dietary intake – Scientific Opinion of the Panel on Food  
463 Additives, Flavourings, Processing Aids and Food Contact Materials (AFC). EFSA Journal 2008;6(7):754.  
464 DOI: 10.2903/j.efsa.2008.75.
- 465 EFSA (2018). Re-evaluation of aluminium sulphates (E 520 523) and sodium aluminium phosphate (E  
466 541) as food additives EFSA Panel on Food Additives and Nutrient Sources added to Food (ANS), EFSA  
467 Journal 2018;16(7):5372. DOI: 10.2903/j.efsa.2018.5372
- 468 Elinder, C.-G., Sjögren, B. (1986). Aluminium. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B.: Handbook on  
469 the toxicology of metals. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.
- 470 European Standard CEN EN 601. Aluminium and aluminium alloys – Castings – Chemical composition  
471 of castings for use in contact with food.
- 472 European Standard CEN EN 602. Aluminium and aluminium alloys – Wrought products – Chemical  
473 composition of semi products used for the fabrication of articles for use in contact with food.
- 474 Gramiccioni, L. et al. (1989). An experimental study about aluminium packaged food. In: "Nutritional  
475 and Toxicological aspects of food processing". Proceedings of an international symposium, Rome, April  
476 14-16, 1987. Walker, R. and Quattrucci Eds. Taylor & Francis London, p. 331-336.
- 477 Gramiccioni, L., Ingrao, G., Milana, M.R., Santaroni, P., Tomassi, G. (1996). Aluminium levels in Italian  
478 diets and in selected foods from aluminium utensils. Food Additives and Contaminants. Vol. 13(7) p.  
479 767-774.
- 480 Hughes, J.T. (1992). Aluminium and your health. British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data, Rimes  
481 House.

- 482 JECFA (1989). Toxicological evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. WHO Food  
483 Additives Series, No. 24.
- 484 JEFCA (2006). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Report of the Joint FAO/WHO  
485 Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organisation.
- 486 JECFA (2012): Safety evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants prepared by the Seventy-  
487 fourth meeting of the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives, volume 65. ISBN: 978 92  
488 4 166065 5.
- 489 Kolbaum A. E., Berg K., Müller F. D., Kappenstein O., O. L. (2019): Dietary Exposure to Elements from  
490 the first German Pilot Total Diet Study (TDS). Food Additives & Contaminants. Part A, Online first. DOI:  
491 10.1080/19440049.2019.1668967
- 492 Krewski, D., Yokel, R.A., Nieboer, E., Borchelt, D., Cohen, J., Harry, J., Kacew, S., Lindsay, J., Mahfouz,  
493 A.M., Rondeau, V. (2007). Human health risk assessment for aluminium, aluminium oxide, and  
494 aluminium hydroxide. Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health – Part B: Critical Reviews, 10  
495 (SUPPL. 1), pp. 1-269.
- 496 Liukkonen-Lilja, H. Piepponen, S. (1992). Leaching of aluminium from aluminium dishes and packages.  
497 Food Additives and Contaminants, Vol. 9 (3) p. 213-223.
- 498 Mei, L., Yao, T. (1993). Aluminium contamination of food from using aluminium ware. Intern. J.  
499 Environ. Anal. Chem. Vol. 50 p. 1-8.
- 500 Milana et al. 2019, Rapporti Istisan 19/23. Studio dell'esposizione del consumatore all'alluminio  
501 derivante dal contatto alimentare. Available (in Italian) at  
502 [https://www.iss.it/documents/20126/5273083/19\\_23\\_web\\_rev.pdf/88a5a0c6-dc06-e290-9bc6-3e6fd18d0e21?t=1582808194139](https://www.iss.it/documents/20126/5273083/19_23_web_rev.pdf/88a5a0c6-dc06-e290-9bc6-3e6fd18d0e21?t=1582808194139)  
503
- 504 Müller, J.P., Steinegger, A., Schlatter, C. (1993). Contribution of aluminium from packaging materials  
505 and cooking utensils to the daily aluminium intake. Z. Lebensm. Unters. Forsch. Vol. 197 p. 332-341.
- 506 Nagy, E., Jobst, K. (1994). Aluminium dissolved from kitchen utensils. Bull. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.  
507 Vol. 52, 9. p. 396-399.
- 508 Pennington, J.A.T., Jones, J.W. (1989). Dietary intake of aluminium. Aluminium and Health – A critical  
509 review. Gitelman, p. 67-70.
- 510 Priest N., Newton D., Day J., Talbot R., and Warner A. (1995): Human metabolism of aluminium-26 and  
511 gallium-67 injected as citrates. Human & Experimental Toxicology 14 (3), 287-293. DOI:  
512 10.1177/096032719501400309
- 513 Ranau, R., Oehlenschläger, J., Steinhart, H. (2001). Aluminium levels of fish fillets baked and grilled in  
514 aluminium foil. Food Chemistry, Vol. 73 (1), p. 1-6.
- 515 Regulation (EC) No 1333/2008 of the European parliament and of the council of 16 december 2008 on  
516 food additives. OJ L 354, 31.12.2008, p. 16.

517 Sander S, Kappenstein O, Ebner I et al (2018) Release of aluminium and thallium ions from uncoated  
518 food contact materials made of aluminium alloys into food and food simulant. PLoS One  
519 13(7):e0200778. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0200778>

520 SCCS (Scientific Committee on Consumer Safety), 2020. Opinion on the safety of aluminium in  
521 cosmetic products, preliminary version of 30-31 October 2019, final version of 03-04 March 2020,  
522 SCCS/1613/19.S

523  
524 SCHEER (Scientific Committee on Health, Environmental and Emerging Risks opinion), 2017. SCHEER  
525 Final Opinion on Tolerable intake of aluminium with regards to adapting the migration limits for  
526 aluminium in toys. Available at  
527 [https://ec.europa.eu/health/scientific\\_committees/consultations/public\\_consultations/scheer\\_consultation\\_04\\_en](https://ec.europa.eu/health/scientific_committees/consultations/public_consultations/scheer_consultation_04_en)  
528

529 Tietz T., Lenzner A., Kolbaum A.E., Zellmer S., Riebeling C., Gürtler R., Jung C., Kappenstein O.,  
530 Tentschert J., Giulbudagian M., Merkel S., Pirow R., Lindtner O., Tralau T., Schäfer B., Laux P., Greiner  
531 M., Lampen A., Luch A., Wittkowski R., Hensel A. (2019): Aggregated aluminium exposure: risk  
532 assessment for the general population. Archives of Toxicology, 93 (12), 3503-3521. DOI:  
533 10.1007/s00204-019-02599-z.

534 Turhan, S. (2006). Aluminium contents in baked meats wrapped in aluminium foil. Meat Science, Vol.  
535 74 (4), p. 644-647.

536 WHO (1997). World Health Organization, IPCS INCHEM Environmental Health Criteria 194. Aluminium.  
537 ISBN 92 4 157194 2. Available at <https://incchem.org/documents/ehc/ehc/ehc194.htm>

538 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality: fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
539 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. [http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-](http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf)  
540 [eng.pdf](http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf)

## 541 **Antimony (Sb)**

542 Antimony is naturally present in the Earth's crust and it is discharged into the air from both natural  
543 and human-induced sources. Of the Sb discharged into the air, 41% comes from natural sources, i.e.  
544 soil particles transported by the wind, volcanoes, marine aerosols, forest fires and biogenic sources  
545 (ATSDR, 1992). Human-induced sources of atmospheric discharge include the non-ferrous metals  
546 industry (mines, foundries and refineries) and coal and waste combustion. Sb is discharged into water  
547 from industries producing and exploiting antimony and its compounds (ATSDR, 1992).

### 548 **Sources and levels of intake**

549 Antimony is detected in most foods, except oils, fats, milk and eggs. Highest concentrations were  
550 measured in sugar (8.8 µg/kg), chocolate (4.2 µg/kg), cakes (3.8 µg/kg), meat products (9.9 µg/kg) and  
551 fish (2.6 µg/kg) (ANSES, 2011; FSA, 2009).

552 In the 2014 British total diet study the highest total mean and 97.5<sup>th</sup> percentile exposures were in the  
553 age class 1.5 to 3 years and were 0.031 – 0.073 µg/kg bw/day and 0.065 – 0.12 µg/kg bw/day,

554 respectively. The highest contributing food group to total mean exposure was the ‘Milk’ group with a  
555 total mean exposure of 0.0098 µg/kg bw/day (FSA, 2014). ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake  
556 at 0.03 µg/kg bw/day in adults and 0.04 µg/kg bw/day in children.

## 557 **Metallic food contact materials**

558 Antimony is used in the manufacture of tin alloys (it hardens the alloy) to produce Pewter alloy and  
559 Britannia metal (regarded as specific type of Pewter alloy).

560 European Standard EN 610:1995 applies to tin and tin alloys items coated exclusively with tin or tin  
561 alloy, or partly tin-plated materials that, as finished products, recurrently come into direct contact  
562 with food. It also defines a specific migration limit for antimony (0.01 mg/kg).

563 Antimony can be found as an impurity in aluminium alloys and tin.

564 In France, a maximum permissible antimony content of 2.5% is specified in Information MCDA n°1  
565 (V02 – 01/04/2017) on food contact suitability of metals and alloys.

## 566 **Other food contact materials**

567 Antimony is used as a fire-proofing agent in textiles and plastic materials, as an opacifying agent in  
568 glass, ceramics and enamels, as a pigment in paintings and as a chemical catalyst.

## 569 **Release**

570 During storage of mineral water in PET bottles, the catalyst antimony trioxide (Sb<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>, which exists in  
571 dimerised form) migrates and concentrates in proportion to the time spent in the mineral water  
572 (Shotyk, 2006). Concentrations (<1 ppb) are always below the recommended maximum rates, and  
573 there would appear to be no immediate health hazard.

## 574 **Safety aspects**

575 – WHO (2017) set a guideline value of 0.02 mg/L derived from a TDI of 0.006 mg/kg body  
576 weight/day (0.36 mg/day). This value was based on a NOAEL of 6 mg/kg body weight/day from a sub-  
577 chronic, drinking-water study in rats, presenting decreased body weight gain and reduced food and  
578 water intake. An uncertainty factor of 1,000 (100 for intra-species and inter-species variation and 10  
579 for the use of a sub-chronic study) was applied to the NOAEL, resulting in the TDI of 0.006 mg/kg body  
580 weight/day (WHO, 2003).

581 – EFSA (2004) set a SML of 0.04 mg/kg for antimony based on the TDI derived by the WHO.  
582 This value is also adopted by Regulation (EU) No 10/2011.

## 583 **Conclusions and recommendations**

584 “the SRL for antimony is set at 0.04 mg/kg”

585 The SRL was derived from the TDI of 0.006 mg/kg body weight/day (0.36 mg/day) assessed by WHO  
586 (2003, 2017). Depending on the metallic material, antimony can be considered either as alloying  
587 constituent or as impurity. To not weaken consumer protection, it was concluded that an allowance  
588 of 10% of the toxicological reference value was reasonable. Therefore, assuming that a person of 60  
589 kg body weight consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared with food  
590 contact materials made from metals and alloys, the SRL for antimony is set at 0.04 mg/kg.

## 591 **References**

592 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
593 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

594 ATSDR (1992). Toxicological profile for antimony. US Department of Health and Human Services.  
595 Public Health Service. Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry. Available at  
596 <https://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/ToxProfiles/tp23.pdf>

597 Information MCDA n°1 (V02 – 01/04/2017). Food contact suitability of metals and alloys. Available  
598 (in English, only the French version is the official version) at  
599 [https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions\\_services/dgcrf/securite/produits\\_alimentaires](https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions_services/dgcrf/securite/produits_alimentaires/materiaux_contact/doc_pdf/fiche_metaux-alliages_version_anglaise.pdf)  
600 [/materiaux\\_contact/doc\\_pdf/fiche\\_metaux-alliages\\_version\\_anglaise.pdf](https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions_services/dgcrf/securite/produits_alimentaires/materiaux_contact/doc_pdf/fiche_metaux-alliages_version_anglaise.pdf)  
601 Available (in French) at  
602 [https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions\\_services/dgcrf/securite/produits\\_alimentaires](https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions_services/dgcrf/securite/produits_alimentaires/materiaux_contact/fiches-metaux-alliages-v2.pdf)  
603 [/materiaux\\_contact/fiches-metaux-alliages-v2.pdf](https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions_services/dgcrf/securite/produits_alimentaires/materiaux_contact/fiches-metaux-alliages-v2.pdf)

604 EFSA (2004). Opinion of the Scientific Panel on Food Additives, Flavourings, Processing Aids and  
605 Materials in Contact with Food (AFC) on a request from the Commission related to a 2nd list of  
606 substances for food contact materials adopted on 7 January 2004, The EFSA Journal (2004) 24, 1-13.  
607 DOI: 10.2903/j.efsa.2004.24a.

608 European Standard EN 610:1995 of 01 July 1995 on tin and tin alloys.

609 FSA (2014). Measurement of the concentrations of metals and other elements from the 2014 UK total  
610 diet study. Available at [https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)  
611 [metals-and-other-elements](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)

612 Shotyk, W.; Krachler, M.; Chen, B. (2006). Contamination of Canadian and European bottled waters  
613 with antimony from PET containers. *Journal of Environmental Monitoring*, 8, p. 288-292.

614 WHO (2003). Background document for development of guidelines for drinking-water quality,  
615 WHO/SDE/WSH/03.04/74. Available at  
616 [https://www.who.int/water\\_sanitation\\_health/dwq/chemicals/antimony.pdf](https://www.who.int/water_sanitation_health/dwq/chemicals/antimony.pdf)

617 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality: fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
618 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. [http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-](http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf)  
619 [eng.pdf](http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf)

## 620 **Chromium (Cr)**

621 Chromium is found mainly in the trivalent form in the environment. Hexavalent chromium, or  
622 chromate, may also be found in very small amounts, usually arising from anthropogenic sources  
623 (Beliles, 1994), or present in minerals and rocks in some countries as Greece and Italy (Kazakis et al.,  
624 2015). Cr(III) has the ability to form strong, inert complexes with a wide range of naturally-occurring  
625 organic and inorganic ligands (Florence and Batley, 1980). In most soils and bedrocks, chromium is  
626 immobilised in the trivalent state (Florence and Batley, 1980). Chromium (III) is an essential element  
627 to human. Chromium is found at low levels in most biological materials.

## 628 **Sources and levels of intake**

629 The main sources of chromium are cereals, meat, vegetables, white fish and vegetable oil, while fruits  
630 contain smaller amounts (EVM, 2003). Most foodstuffs contain less than 0.1 mg/kg of chromium (EVM,  
631 2002; Nordic Council of Ministers, 1995). Chromium is present in the diet mainly as Cr(III) (EVM, 2003).  
632 According to EVM, most of the chromium in food originates from food processing using stainless steel  
633 food processors and containers (EVM, 2003). The EFSA Panel on Contaminants in the Food Chain  
634 (CONTAM Panel) decided to consider all the reported analytical results of chromium in food as Cr(III).  
635 This assumption was based on the outcome of recent speciation work, the fact that food is by-and  
636 large a reducing medium, and that oxidation of Cr(III) to Cr(VI) would not be favoured in such a  
637 medium. (EFSA 2014).

638 Dietary intake of chromium from food sources in multiple European countries ranges between 61-160  
639 µg/day for adults, with an upper intake of 580 µg/person/day (EFSA, 2010).

640 Chronic dietary exposure to Cr(III) was estimated combining the food mean occurrence data with the  
641 food consumption data at the individual level. Overall mean human chronic dietary exposure ranged  
642 from a minimum lower bound (LB) of 0.6 to a maximum upper bound (UB) of 5.9 µg/kg b.w. per day.  
643 The 95<sup>th</sup> percentile dietary exposure values ranged from 1.1 (minimum LB) to 9.0 (maximum UB) µg/kg  
644 b.w. per day. The adult populations showed lower exposure to Cr(III) than the younger populations  
645 (EFSA, 2014).

646 ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake of total chromium at 277 µg/person/day in adults and 223  
647 µg/person/day in children.

## 648 **Metallic food contact materials**

649 Chromium is found in some types of cans and utensils. In cans, it serves to passivate tinplate surfaces.  
650 Chromium is used in the production of stainless steel of various kinds and in alloys with iron, nickel  
651 and cobalt. Ferro-chromium and chromium metal are the most important classes of chromium used  
652 in the alloy industry (Langaard and Norseth, 1986). All stainless steels contain chromium (minimum  
653 10.5% – see section on stainless steel and alloy) and they are important food contact materials used  
654 for transportation (e.g. in milk trucks, for processing equipment e.g. in the dairy and chocolate  
655 industry, in processing of fruit such as apples, grapes, oranges and tomatoes, for containers such as  
656 wine tanks, for brew kettles and beer kegs, for processing of dry food such as cereals, flour and sugar,  
657 for utensils such as blenders and bread-dough mixers, in slaughter-houses, in the processing of fish,  
658 for nearly all of the equipment in professional kitchens such as restaurants and hospitals, in electric  
659 kettles, cookware and kitchen appliances of all kinds such as sinks and drains, for bowls, knives, spoons

660 and forks). Chromium is also used to coat other metals, which are then protected from corrosion  
661 because of the passive film that forms on the surface of chromium.

## 662 **Other food contact materials**

663 Chromium compounds are found in pottery, glazes, paper and dyes (Langaard and Norseth, 1986).

## 664 **Release**

665 There is only limited information on the release of chromium from metals and alloys used in food  
666 contact materials and articles. In one study a comparison was performed between meals prepared in  
667 different stainless steel and glass pans. The amount of chromium measured in stainless steel cooked  
668 meals was higher for some, but not for others when compared to glass cooked meals (Accominotti,  
669 1998).

670 Another study investigated the release of chromium from different stainless steel pots using cold and  
671 boiling 5% acetic acid. While, with one exception, no chromium was measured when cold acetic acid  
672 was used, release into boiling acetic acid after 5 min. ranged between 0.010-0.315 mg/kg (Kuligowski,  
673 1992).

674 Further, in a market survey of stainless steel cutlery, conducted by the German surveillance  
675 authorities, elevated levels of chromium up to 43 mg/L were detected. The release was tested with  
676 3% acetic acid for 2 hours at 70 °C. It was noted by the authorities that in particular cheap, low quality  
677 cutlery showed the highest release (CVUA-OWL, 2009).

678 Nickel-chromium electroplated articles should also be tested for nickel release. (Whittington et al.,  
679 2015).

## 680 **Safety aspects**

681 – JECFA has not evaluated chromium.

682 – WHO established a provisional guideline of 0.05 mg/L for total chromium (WHO, 2017).

683 – The speciation of chromium is of great importance for toxicity. Cr(III), the most stable  
684 oxidation state in biological materials, is an essential element for normal glucose metabolism, whereas  
685 Cr(VI) is highly toxic (Beliles, 1994; Costa, 1997; Nordic Council of Ministers, 1995). Cr(III) has low  
686 toxicity due to low absorption (about 0.5%) (Nordic Council of Ministers, 1995). Toxic aspects of  
687 chromium are related to Cr(VI), due to its high absorption, easy penetration of the cell membranes  
688 and its genotoxicity and oxidising properties (Nordic Council of Ministers, 1995) .

689 – SCF (2003) concluded in its opinion on the tolerable upper level of trivalent chromium for  
690 foods for particular nutritional uses and for food supplements, that there was no evidence of adverse  
691 effects associated with supplementary intake of chromium up to a dose of 1 mg chromium/day.

692 – WHO (1996) considers that chromium supplementation should not exceed 250 µg/day.

693 – The EVM (2003) assessed chromium but were unable to establish a safe upper level for  
694 intake. However, 0.15 mg Cr(III)/kg body weight/day was not expected to result in adverse effects.  
695 This is based on a dose of 15 mg Cr/kg body weight/day, administered to rats as chromium chloride  
696 that did not show adverse effects. An uncertainty factor of 100 was used (10 for inter-species and 10  
697 for intra-species variation). This guidance applies to Cr(III) compounds only and excludes chromium  
698 picolinate (a synthetic chromium compound with higher solubility and lipophilicity than other Cr(III)  
699 compounds, which has been shown to cause DNA damage in mammalian cells in vitro).

700 – In 2010, the EFSA Panel on Food Additives and Nutrient Sources added to Food (ANS) stated  
701 that “a Tolerable Upper limit for chromium is not available. The Panel also noted that both the limit  
702 of 1 mg chromium/day proposed by the SCF, and of 250 µg chromium/day for supplementation  
703 proposed by the WHO are based on studies that were not designed to test the safety of chromium  
704 The Panel also noted that an intake of 250 µg chromium/day from supplementation would be in the  
705 range of intake of chromium from the regular diet. Therefore, the Panel concluded that until more is  
706 known about chromium, the value set by the WHO seems most adequate to limit the intake of  
707 chromium from foods for particular nutritional uses and foods intended for the general population  
708 (including food supplements).”

709 – According to ICH Q3D, the oral Chromium PDE is 10700 µg/day. Sources of chromium in  
710 pharmaceuticals may include colorants, leaching from equipment or container closure systems, and  
711 catalysts. Except when it is used as a catalyst, intake of chromium from pharmaceuticals will be in the  
712 form of metallic chromium (Cr(0)) or Cr(3+) rather than the more toxic Cr(6+); therefore, for drug  
713 products, this safety assessment is based on the known toxicity of Cr(3+) and Cr(6+) is excluded from  
714 this assessment. In 2014, the EFSA Panel on Contaminants in the Food Chain (CONTAM) derived a TDI  
715 of 0.3 mg/kg body weight per day for Cr(III) from the lowest NOAEL identified in an NTP chronic oral  
716 toxicity study in rats. Under the assumption that all chromium in food is Cr(III), the mean and 95th  
717 percentile of dietary exposure across all age groups were well below the TDI and therefore do not  
718 raise concerns for public health. In the case of drinking water, the Panel considered all chromium in  
719 water as Cr(VI) and a BMDL10 of 1 mg/kg bw/day from a carcinogenicity study in mice as adequate  
720 starting point for MOE-calculation. The calculated MOEs are mainly above 10,000 and hence indicate  
721 low concern regarding Cr(VI) intake via drinking water (water intended for human consumption and  
722 natural mineral waters) for all age groups.

## 723 **Conclusions and recommendations**

724 “the SRL for chromium is set at 1 mg/kg”

725 Considerations for Cr (VI):

726 In water: Data from the literature (Mazinianian et al., 2016) and member state official control  
727 laboratories indicate that release of total chromium [sum of Cr(III) and Cr(VI)] in water is negligible.  
728 Therefore, release of Cr(VI) from stainless steel FCMs in water, can be considered negligible.

729 In food: EFSA considered as a reasonable assumption that all chromium in food is in the form of Cr(III).  
730 Therefore, any released chromium in food can be assumed to be released as Cr(III) and not further  
731 oxidise to Cr(VI). Summarising, based on the current state of the art, the adoption of an SRL for Cr(VI)

732 is not necessary. However, EFSA (2014) recommends that further data for the characterisation of  
733 Cr(VI) reduction in the gastrointestinal tract at doses relevant for human exposure should be  
734 generated.

735 Considerations for Cr (III)

736 Taking into account the TDI of 0.3 mg/kg b.w. per day for Cr(III) which was derived by EFSA (EFSA,  
737 2014), a 20% allocation factor and the conventional assumption that a person of 60 kg body weight  
738 consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared using food contact materials  
739 made from metals and alloys, the SRL for Cr(III) could be set at up to 3.6 mg/kg food. However, since  
740 several RASFF alerts exceeding 3.6 mg/kg have been reported, to prevent and reduce the release of  
741 Cr from food contact materials and articles as far as possible in order to protect public health, it was  
742 decided that a specific release limit for total Cr should be set at 1 mg/kg. Based on the current state-  
743 -of-art, this value is reasonably achievable.

744 Following the above-mentioned considerations, the SRL for total chromium is set at 1 mg/kg.

745 Release of Cr into water should be monitored for FCMs intended to be used in contact with water. To  
746 ensure a MOE above 10,000, the release of Cr(VI) should not exceed 0.006 mg/L (BMDL10 of 1 mg/kg  
747 bw/day, a MOE of 10,000, a person of 60 kg bw consuming 1 liter water per day). Therefore, if the  
748 concentration of total chromium released in water exceeds 0.006 mg/kg, further investigation of Cr  
749 (VI) release is recommended.

## 750 **References**

751 Accominotti, M., Bost, M., Haudrechy, P., Mantout, B., Cunat, P.J., Comet, F., Mouterde, C., Plantard,  
752 F., Chambon, P., Vallon, J.J., (1998). Contribution to chromium and nickel enrichment during cooking  
753 of foods in stainless steel utensils. *Contact Dermatitis*, 38 (6), pp. 305-310.

754 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
755 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

756 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: *Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology*, Fourth edition, Volume  
757 2, Part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

758 Chemical and Veterinary Investigation Office Westphalia-Lippe (CVUA-OWL), Annual Report 2009.  
759 Available at [https://cvua-owl.de/service/veroeffentlichungen/jahresberichte/65-cvua-jb-](https://cvua-owl.de/service/veroeffentlichungen/jahresberichte/65-cvua-jb-2009/download)  
760 [2009/download](https://cvua-owl.de/service/veroeffentlichungen/jahresberichte/65-cvua-jb-2009/download)

761 Costa, M. (1997). Toxicity and carcinogenicity of Cr(VI) in animal models and humans. *Critical Reviews*  
762 *in Toxicology*. 27(5) p. 431-442.

763 EFSA (2010). EFSA Panel on Food Additives and Nutrient Sources added to Food (ANS); Scientific  
764 Opinion on the safety of trivalent chromium as a nutrient added for nutritional purposes to foodstuffs  
765 for particular nutritional uses and foods intended for the general population (including food  
766 supplements). *EFSA Journal* 2010;8(12):1882. DOI:10.2903/j.efsa.2010.1882

- 767 EFSA (2014). Scientific Opinion on the risks to public health related to the presence of chromium  
768 in food and drinking water. EFSA Journal 2014;12(3):3595, 261 pp. DOI:10.2903/j.efsa.2014.3595
- 769 EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
770 Available at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/vitmin2003.pdf>
- 771 Florence, T.M., Batley, G.E. (1980). Chemical speciation in natural waters. CRC Critical Reviews in  
772 Analytical Chemistry. p. 219-296.
- 773 Kazakis, N., Kantiranis, N., Voudouris, K.S., Mitrakas, M., Kaprara, E., Pavlou, A., (2015) “Geogenic Cr  
774 oxidation on the surface of mafic minerals and the hydrogeological conditions influencing hexavalent  
775 chromium concentrations in groundwater”, Science of The Total Environment, Volume 514, Pages  
776 224-238, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2015.01.080>
- 777 Kuligowski, J., Halperin, K.M., (1992). Stainless steel cookware as a significant source of nickel,  
778 chromium, and iron. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology, 23 (2), pp. 211-215.
- 779 ICH harmonised guideline for elemental impurities ICH Q3D(R1) Final version Adopted on 22 March  
780 2019. Available at <https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D->  
781 R1EWG\_Document\_Step4\_Guideline\_2019\_0322.pdf .
- 782 Langaard, S., Norseth, T. (1986). Chromium. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. Handbook on  
783 the toxicology of metals. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.
- 784 Mazinanian, N., Herting, G., Odnevall Wallinder, I., Hedberg, Y., (2016) Metal Release and Corrosion  
785 Resistance of Different Stainless Steel Grades in Simulated Food Contact, CORROSION. 2016;  
786 72(6):775-790.
- 787 Nordic Council of Ministers (1995). Risk evaluation of essential trace elements – essential versus toxic  
788 levels of intake. Report of a Nordic project group. Ed.: Oskarsson, A. Nordic Council of Ministers,  
789 Copenhagen, Denmark.
- 790 SCF (1993). Report of the Scientific Committee for Food (31st series, 1993). Nutrient and Energy  
791 Intakes for the European Community. Commission of the European Communities.
- 792 SCF (2003). Opinion of the Scientific Committee on Food on the Tolerable Upper Intake Level of  
793 Trivalent Chromium (expressed on 4 April 2003), SCF/CS/NUT/UPPLEV/67 Final 23 April 2003.
- 794 Whittington C. M., Lo W. Y. and Yau M. Y., (2015). Prevention of nickel release from decorative nickel-  
795 chromium electroplated articles in the context of allergic contact dermatitis, Transactions of the IMF,  
796 93:4, 176-179, DOI: 10.1179/0020296715Z.000000000253
- 797 WHO (1996). Trace elements in human nutrition and health (A report of a re-evaluation of the role of  
798 trace elements in human health and nutrition).
- 799 WHO (2017): Guidelines for Drinkingwater Quality: fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
800 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. [http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-](http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf)  
801 [eng.pdf](http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf)

## 802 Cobalt (Co)

803 Cobalt is a rare element, composing about 0.001% of the Earth's crust (Beliles, 1994). Cobalt often  
804 occurs in association with nickel, silver, lead, copper and iron ores (Elinder and Friberg, 1986). Cobalt  
805 is present in the vitamin cobalamin or vitamin B12 (Elinder and Friberg, 1986).

### 806 Sources and levels of intake

807 Cobalt is normally found in very low concentrations in foodstuffs (approximately 0.01-0.05 mg/kg)  
808 (Beliles, 1986), mainly in green leafy vegetables. Common plants such as lettuce, beets, cabbage,  
809 spinach, and sweet potatoes act as sources of dietary cobalt, with spinach containing between 0.1-0.7  
810 mg/kg on a moisture-free basis (Beliles, 1994).

811 ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 0.18 µg/kg body weight/day in adults and 0.31 µg/kg  
812 body weight/day in children.

### 813 Metallic food contact materials

814 Cobalt is used for the production of high-strength alloys (Elinder and Friberg, 1986). It can account for  
815 between 0.05% and 0.1% of the composition of certain steels.

### 816 Other food contact materials

817 In the glass and ceramic industries, small quantities of cobalt oxide are used to neutralise the yellow  
818 tint resulting from the presence of iron in glass, pottery and enamels. Larger quantities are used to  
819 impart a blue colour to these products (Beliles, 1994). Cobalt oxide is used in enamel coatings on steel  
820 to improve the adherence of the enamel to the metal (Beliles, 1994).

### 821 Release

822 Cobalt is a relatively non-reactive metal and it does not oxidise in dry or moist air (Beliles, 1994).  
823 Cobalt reacts with most acids, but becomes passive in concentrated nitric acid. Cobalt is not attacked  
824 by alkalis, either in solution or when fused, but it combines with halogens when heated (Beliles, 1994).

### 825 Safety aspects

826 – Cobalt is an essential element. An amount of 5 mg in the body is required for vitamin B12 in  
827 order to avoid pernicious anaemia, a fatal illness. Generally, cobalt has a low toxicity. Gastrointestinal  
828 absorption of soluble cobalt compounds can be estimated to be about 25% (Elinder and Friberg, 1986).  
829 Cobalt is used in fertilisers, since a low cobalt concentration in soil may cause cobalt deficiency in  
830 sheep and cattle. Cobalt is also used in human medicine in the treatment of certain iron-resistant  
831 anaemia (Elinder and Friberg, 1986). Even though cobalt is essential to humans and animals, a few  
832 cases of poisoning have been recorded. An effect on the heart, blood pressure, abdominal pain,  
833 breathing difficulties and, in the worst cases, death were seen after intakes of cobalt via large amounts  
834 of contaminated beer (cobalt is used to prevent fermentation) (Elinder and Friberg, 1986).

835 – SCF (1993) scientific opinion on vitamin B12 recommends that daily intake should not exceed  
836 0.2 mg/day.

837 – EFSA (2003) confirmed, in an opinion on oleic acid cobalt salts, the classification of cobalt in  
838 SCF-List 3 with a restriction of 0.05 mg/kg. This value has been adopted Regulation 10/2011 and was  
839 derived by the Dutch RIVM in 1991 based on estimates of total daily intakes.

840 – In 2003, cobalt was assessed by the UK Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals (EVM). While  
841 there was insufficient data to establish a safe upper level, they suggested an intake of 0.023 mg/kg  
842 body weight/day would not be expected to produce adverse effects. This was based on animal data  
843 showing minor testicular effects at 23 mg Co/kg body weight/day with a total uncertainty factor of  
844 1,000 (10 for extrapolation from a LOAEL to a NOAEL and 10 for inter-species and 10 for intra-species  
845 variation) (EVM, 2003).

846 – RIVM (2001) derived a TDI of 0.0014 mg/kg body weight/day (0.08 mg/person/day) from  
847 human data, in which an additional effect from alcohol consumption in the study population was  
848 possible.

## 849 Conclusions and recommendations

850 “the SRL for cobalt is set at 0.02 mg/kg”

851 The TDI established by the RIVM in 2001 was derived from human data. Since European intake data  
852 are scarce, the default allowance of 20% for exposure through food contact materials and articles  
853 made from metals and alloys was applied to the TDI of 0.0014 mg/kg body weight/day. Assuming that  
854 a person of 60 kg body weight consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared  
855 with food contact materials made from metals and alloys, the SRL for cobalt is set at 0.02 mg/kg.

## 856 References

857 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
858 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

859 Beliles (1986). Cobalt. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B.: Handbook on the Toxicology of  
860 Metals, vol. 2, cap. 9, p. 215.

861 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, Fourth edition, Volume  
862 2, Part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

863 EFSA (2003). Opinion of the Scientific Panel on Food Additives, Flavourings, Processing Aids and  
864 Materials in Contact with Food (AFC) on a request from the Commission related to a 1st list of  
865 substances for food contact materials. EFSA Journal 2003; 3:4357. DOI: 10.2903/j.efsa.2003.3

866 Elinder, C.-G., Friberg, L. (1986). Cobalt. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. Handbook on the  
867 toxicology of metals. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.

868 EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
869 Available at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/vitmin2003.pdf>

870 Regulation (EU) No 10/2011 of 14 January 2011 on plastic materials and articles intended to come into  
871 contact with food Text with EEA relevance. OJ L 12, 15.1.2011, p. 1.

872 RIVM (1991). Proposal for the Human-Toxicological MPR-Levels for Derivation of C-values. RIVM  
873 Report 725201005 (in Dutch).

874 RIVM (201). Re-evaluation of human-toxicological maximum permissible risk levels. RIVM Report  
875 711701025.

876 SCF (1993). Reports of the Scientific Committee for Food. 31st series, Food Science and Techniques:  
877 Nutrient and Energy Intakes for the European Community. Commission of the European Communities,  
878 1993.

## 879 **Copper (Cu)**

880 Copper is found at a concentration of 70 mg/kg in the Earth's crust (Beliles, 1994). Copper exists in  
881 two oxidation states: Cu(I) (cuprous) and Cu(II) (cupric). Copper can also occur in a trivalent state due  
882 to certain chemical reactions. Copper is amongst the most effective of metal biochemical oxidising  
883 agents. Copper is an essential element to man (Aaseth and Norseth, 1986). Copper also has the ability  
884 to restrict bacterial growth, e.g. Legionella in drinking water systems (Rogers et al., 1994).

### 885 **Sources and levels of intake**

886 Copper is naturally present in most foodstuffs in the form of copper ions or copper salts. Generally,  
887 the concentration of copper in foodstuffs is about 2 mg/kg or less, the main sources being meat, offal,  
888 fish, pecans, milk chocolate and green vegetables (Aaseth and Norseth, 1986). However, levels of up  
889 to 39 mg/kg have been reported for liver and cocoa.

890 In the European Union Risk Assessment Report (EU-RAR, 2008), copper exposure from food and  
891 beverages, estimated from a wide range of duplicate diet studies and market basket analysis  
892 consistently show copper intakes <2 mg/day. An overall median copper intake of 1.25 mg Cu/day was  
893 derived (EU-RAR, 2008).

894 ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 1.94 mg/person/day in adults and the 95<sup>th</sup> percentile at  
895 4.1 mg/person/day.

896 Additionally, exposure to copper via dietary supplements can contribute up to 2 mg/day to the total  
897 intake (EU-RAR, 2008).

### 898 **Metallic food contact materials**

899 Copper vessels are traditionally used in many specialised food processing activities, such as in  
900 breweries and distilleries, for cheese-making, chocolate, dry vegetables, jam and sweets production.  
901 In general, copper is used unalloyed for food utensils, for example in saucepans, which are usually  
902 lined inside with tin or stainless steel. Copper is used in alloys, particularly brass, bronze, and nickel  
903 silver.

## 904 Other food contact materials

905 No information is available.

## 906 Release

907 Copper is slowly attacked by dilute hydrochloric acid or dilute sulphuric acid and is soluble in ammonia  
908 water (Beliles, 1994). Acidic foodstuffs can attack copper in utensils. Therefore, copper may be present  
909 in foodstuffs due to release from food contact materials, e.g. copper utensils, copper pipes, etc., or  
910 from using drinking water from copper pipes for food preparation. In some cases, high copper release  
911 may induce some discolouration.

## 912 Safety aspects

913 – JECFA (1982) established a PMTDI of 0.5 mg/kg body weight per day from all sources and set  
914 a dietary requirement is 0.05 mg/kg body weight per day.

915 – WHO (2017) set a guideline value for copper at 2 mg/L in drinking water.

916 – There is greater health risk from a copper deficiency than from excess copper intake. Acute  
917 toxicity due to ingestion of copper is infrequent in humans. However, when it occurs it is usually a  
918 consequence of the release of copper into beverages (including drinking water) or from accidental or  
919 deliberate ingestion of high quantities of copper salts. Symptoms include vomiting, lethargy, acute  
920 haemolytic anaemia, renal and liver damage, neurotoxicity, increased blood pressure and respiratory  
921 rates. In some cases, coma and death ensued (Environmental Health Criteria for Copper, 1996).  
922 Chronic copper poisoning has not been described in the general population (Aaseth and Norseth,  
923 1986).

924 – SCF (2003) and EFSA (2006) derived an upper limit for adults of 5 mg/person/day from a  
925 dietary supplementation study. This value arose from a copper dose of 10 mg/day, where no adverse  
926 effects were detected, and an uncertainty factor of 2 for population variability. However, this study  
927 was characterised by a limited number of participants (n=7) and did not establish a dose-response-  
928 relationship. For children aged 1-3 years, an upper limit of 1 mg/day was derived, taking into  
929 consideration their lower body weight.

930 – The UK Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals assessed copper and derived a safe upper  
931 level of 0.16 mg/kg body weight/day based on a NOAEL of 16 mg/kg body weight/day in a sub-chronic  
932 rat toxicity study and using an uncertainty factor of 100 (EVM, 2003).

933 – According to ICH Q3D, the oral PDE for copper is 3400 µg/day. Copper compounds (e.g.,  
934 copper chromite) are being used as catalysts in hydrogenolysis and decarboxylation reactions.

935 – In 2008, the copper industry submitted a voluntary risk assessment report to the European  
936 Commission, which was evaluated by the “Technical Committee for New and Existing Substances”  
937 (TCNES) and the “Scientific Committee for Health and Environmental Risk” (SCHER). A NOAEL of 16.3  
938 mg/kg body weight/day was derived from a 90 day sub-chronic rat study, which was also confirmed

939 by a two-generation rat reproductive toxicity study. After applying an uncertainty factor of 100, 0.16  
940 mg/kg body weight/day was set, corresponding to 9.8 mg/day (EU-RAR, 2008).

## 941 **Conclusions and recommendations**

942 “the SRL for copper is set at 4 mg/kg”

943 Since the upper limit derived by SCF (2003) and EFSA (2006) was based on a supplementation study  
944 performed with only seven adults and showing no adverse effects, it was concluded to establish an  
945 SRL based on the EU-RAR assessment with a human derived value of 9.8 mg/day.

946 The intake data were used to estimate a worst-case oral exposure to copper. Assuming a worst-case  
947 intake from food/drinking water at the 95<sup>th</sup> percentile of 4 mg/day and an additional intake from  
948 copper supplements of 2 mg/day, a total intake of 6 mg/day can be calculated. Since this worst-case  
949 intake is below the toxicologically derived limit of 9.8 mg/day, the difference can be allocated to  
950 exposure from food contact materials made from metals and alloys.

951 Consequently, assuming that a person of 60 kg body weight consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that  
952 is packaged and/or prepared with food contact materials made from metals and alloys, the SRL for  
953 copper is set at 4 mg/kg.

954 Children were not considered as a vulnerable sub-population as done by SCF (2003) and EFSA (2006)  
955 because of the negligible exposure of children to food contact materials and articles made out of  
956 copper (Foster, 2010).

957 Release due to traditional use, as referred to in Regulation (EC) No. 1935/2004, falls outside the scope  
958 of this SRL.

## 959 **References**

960 Aaseth, J., Norseth, T. (1986). Copper. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. Handbook on the  
961 toxicology of metals. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.

962 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
963 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

964 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, Fourth edition, Volume  
965 2, Part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

966 EFSA (2006). Tolerable upper intake levels for vitamins and minerals. Scientific Committee on Food,  
967 Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies. February 2006, Parma. Available at  
968 <https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-/publication/3748ff41-1c4a-4232-8546-fb176a685e13>

969 Environmental Health Criteria for Copper (1996). PCS/EHC 96.28 unedited, page 9.

970 European Risk Assessment Report (EU-RAR). (2008) Copper Voluntary Risk Assessment Report.  
971 European Copper Institute. Available at <http://copperalliance.eu/about-us/voluntary->

972 initiatives/voluntary-risk-assessment/ and <https://echa.europa.eu/copper-voluntary-risk->  
 973 assessment-reports

974 EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
 975 Available at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/vitmin2003.pdf>

976 Foster, E., Mathers, J.C., Adamson, A.J. (2010). Packaged food intake by British children aged 0 to 6  
 977 years. Food Additives and Contaminants – Part A Chemistry, Analysis, Control, Exposure and Risk  
 978 Assessment, 27 (3), 380-388.

979 ICH harmonised guideline for elemental impurities ICH Q3D(R1) Final version Adopted on 22 March  
 980 2019. Available at <https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D->  
 981 R1EWG\_Document\_Step4\_Guideline\_2019\_0322.pdf .

982 JECFA (1982). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Twenty-sixth report of the Joint  
 983 FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organization, Technical Report Series  
 984 683.

985 Regulation (EC) No 1935/2004 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 October 2004 on  
 986 materials and articles intended to come into contact with food and repealing Directives 80/590/EEC  
 987 and 89/109/EEC. OJ L 338, 13.11.2004, p. 4

988 Rogers, J., Dowsett, A.B., Dennis, P.J., Lee, J.V., Keevil, C.W. (1994). Influence of plumbing materials  
 989 on bio film formation and growth of Legionella pneumophila in notable water systems. Appl. Environ.  
 990 Microbiol. p. 1842-1851.

991 SCF (2003). Opinion of the Scientific Committee on Food on the Tolerable Upper Intake Level of  
 992 Copper. European Commission.

993 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality: fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
 994 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. [http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-](http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf)  
 995 eng.pdf

## 996 **Iron (Fe)**

997 Iron is the fourth most abundant element (5%) in the Earth's crust (Beliles, 1994). Iron is used for the  
 998 production of steel. The principal compounds of iron are ferrous Fe(II) and ferric Fe(III) (Beliles, 1994).  
 999 Iron is essential for the synthesis of blood pigments. Under normal conditions the body contains about  
 1000 4 g of iron (Beliles, 1994). Haemoglobin contains the greatest amount of iron in the body (67%), and  
 1001 this is largely in the red blood cells (Beliles, 1994).

## 1002 **Sources and levels of intake**

1003 Iron is present in most foods and beverages. In general, liver, kidney, beef, ham, egg yolk, and  
 1004 soybeans have iron concentrations in the order of 30-150 mg/kg (Elinder, 1986). In several countries  
 1005 the cereal most commonly eaten, e.g. wheat flour, is fortified with iron in order to provide the  
 1006 necessary amount of iron in the diet (Nordic Council of Ministers, 1995).

1007 Mean dietary intakes from various European countries range from 10-22 mg/day and the 97.5th  
1008 percentile from 16-72 mg/day (SCF, 2003 and EFSA, 2006).

1009 ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 7.71 mg/person/day in adults and 6.57 mg/person/day  
1010 in children.

## 1011 **Metallic food contact materials**

1012 Iron is used in a great variety of kitchen utensils. Iron is found in steel cans and in lids and closures for  
1013 glass bottles and jars. Cast iron is also used for pots and pans. Iron is the major constituent of steel,  
1014 which also contains small quantities of certain other metals, such as chromium, manganese,  
1015 molybdenum and nickel (Elinder, 1986).

## 1016 **Other food contact materials**

1017 Several forms of iron oxide are used as paint pigments (Beliles, 1994), of which some are also  
1018 permitted as food colourings. The soluble salts are variously used as pigments in food contact  
1019 materials (Beliles, 1994).

## 1020 **Release**

1021 Food contamination by iron may originate from food processing equipment, containers and other  
1022 utensils used for foodstuffs. Tests performed on various stainless steel saucepans using boiling 5%  
1023 acetic acid as a simulant and a contact time of 5 minutes resulted in iron release between 0.22-2.85  
1024 mg/kg (Kuligowski, 1992). Similarly, a survey of teapots showed iron release between 0.1 mg/L and  
1025 4.7 mg/L using a citric acid solution (1 g/L) as a simulant and a contact time of 30 min. (Bolle, 2011).  
1026 Rare cases of release of very high quantities of iron from food contact materials such as iron kitchen  
1027 utensils have been observed. For example, the release of 2500 mg/kg iron from a wok and a cast iron  
1028 skillet were observed under the conditions mentioned above (Kuligowski, 1992).

## 1029 **Safety aspects**

1030 – JECFA (1983) established a PMTDI at 0.8 mg/kg body weight/day. The value applies to iron  
1031 from all sources except for iron oxides used as colouring agents, supplemental iron taken during  
1032 pregnancy and lactation and supplemental iron for specific clinical requirements. The value is eight  
1033 times lower than the acute toxic dose.

1034 – SCF (1993) evaluated iron mainly to be a deficiency problem.

1035 –WHO proposed that no health-based guideline value be set for iron in drinking water (WHO,  
1036 2017).

1037 – The recommended intake is 10-15 mg/day (Nordic Council of Ministers, 1995).

1038 – Iron is an essential trace metal (JECFA, 1983). Iron is mainly a deficiency problem and not a  
1039 toxicological problem. Iron deficiency is generally acknowledged to be the single most common  
1040 nutritional deficiency in both developing and developed countries (Nordic Council of Ministers, 1995).

1041 Certain iron salts, mainly ferrous sulphate and ferrous succinate, are frequently used for the treatment  
1042 and prevention of iron deficiency in humans (Beliles, 1994). Under normal conditions, about 5-15% of  
1043 the iron is absorbed (Elinder, 1986). Ingestion of soluble iron salts by children in doses exceeding 0.5  
1044 g of iron can give rise to severe lesions in the gastrointestinal tract, followed by metabolic acidosis,  
1045 shock and toxic hepatitis (Elinder, 1986).

1046 – Iron supplementation of more than 30 mg/day could be associated with iron accumulation  
1047 indicators in older adults (Fleming, 2002).

1048 – The Belgian Royal Decree of 03 March 1992 on marketing of nutriments and foodstuffs with  
1049 added nutriments sets the maximum authorised intake via food supplements at 28 mg/day.

1050 – In 2006, the EFSA Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies were unable  
1051 to establish a tolerable upper intake level as the data available were insufficient. The risk of adverse  
1052 effects from current dietary iron intakes, including fortified foods in some countries but excluding  
1053 supplements, was considered to be low for the population as a whole, except those homozygous for  
1054 hereditary haemochromatosis. Mean dietary iron intake across the EU was in the range of 10-22  
1055 mg/person/day and the 97.5th percentile ranged from 16-72 mg/person/day (EFSA, 2006).

1056 – The EVM did not consider there to be sufficient data to derive a safe upper level of iron  
1057 intake, but they suggested that a supplemental intake of 0.28 mg/kg body weight/day (17 mg/day)  
1058 would not be expected to produce adverse effects in the majority of people (EVM, 2003). This is based  
1059 on data showing that doses between 50 and 220 mg/day cause effects in humans, and using the lower  
1060 end of this range and an uncertainty factor of 3 to extrapolate from a LOAEL to a NOAEL. No factor for  
1061 inter-species variation was required and, as the data had been collected in large numbers of people,  
1062 it was not deemed necessary to use an uncertainty factor for inter-individual variation.

1063 – ICH Q3D: Iron is one of some elemental impurities for which PDEs have not been established  
1064 due to their low inherent toxicity and/or differences in regional regulations are not addressed in this  
1065 guideline. If these elemental impurities are present or included in the drug product they are addressed  
1066 by other guidelines and/or regional regulations and practices that may be applicable for particular  
1067 elements.

## 1068 **Conclusions and recommendations**

1069 “the SRL for iron of 40 mg/kg is reasonably achievable”

1070 Since no toxicologically derived upper limit could be set, it was decided that a specific release limit  
1071 for iron should be set at levels that are as low as reasonably achievable (ALARA). Such an approach  
1072 ensures that the manufacturer apply measures to prevent and reduce the release of iron from food  
1073 contact materials and articles as far as possible in order to protect public health.

1074 Data provided by industry and member states show that an SRL of 40 mg/kg is reasonably achievable  
1075 at present.

1076 This specific release limit should be subject to a review at the latest three years after the adoption of  
1077 this Technical guide to take account of the advance of scientific and technical knowledge and  
1078 improvements in good manufacturing practice.

## 1079 **References**

1080 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
1081 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

1082 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology. Fourth Edition. Volume  
1083 2, part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

1084 Belgian Royal Decree of 3 March 1992 on marketing of nutriments and foodstuffs with added  
1085 nutriments (Belgian Official Journal of 15 April 1992).

1086 Bolle, F., Brian, W., Petit, D., Boutakhrit, K., Feraille, G., van Loco, J. (2011). Tea brewed in traditional  
1087 metallic teapots as a significant source of lead, nickel and other chemical elements. Food Additives  
1088 and Contaminants – Part A Chemistry, Analysis, Control, Exposure and Risk Assessment, 28 (9), pp.  
1089 1287-1293.

1090 EFSA (2006). Tolerable upper intake levels for vitamins and minerals. Scientific Committee on Food,  
1091 Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies. February 2006, Parma. Available at  
1092 <https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-/publication/3748ff41-1c4a-4232-8546-fb176a685e13>

1093 Elinder, C.-G. (1986). Iron. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. Handbook on the toxicology of  
1094 metals. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.

1095 EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
1096 Available at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/vitmin2003.pdf>

1097 Fleming, D.J., Tucker, K.L., Jaques, P.F., Dallal, G.E., Wilson, P.W.F., Wood, R.J. (2002). Dietary factors  
1098 associated with risk of high iron stores in the elderly Framingham heart study cohort. Am J Clin Nutr  
1099 76: 1375-1384.

1100 ICH harmonised guideline for elemental impurities ICH Q3D(R1) Final version Adopted on 22 March  
1101 2019. Available at [https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D-](https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D-R1EWG_Document_Step4_Guideline_2019_0322.pdf)  
1102 [R1EWG\\_Document\\_Step4\\_Guideline\\_2019\\_0322.pdf](https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D-R1EWG_Document_Step4_Guideline_2019_0322.pdf) .

1103 JECFA (1983). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Twenty-seventh report of the  
1104 Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organization, Technical Report  
1105 Series 696.

1106 Kuligowski, J., Halperin, K.M., (1992). Stainless steel cookware as a significant source of nickel,  
1107 chromium, and iron. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology, 23 (2), p. 211-215.

1108 Nordic Council of Ministers (1995). Risk evaluation of essential trace elements – essential versus toxic  
1109 levels of intake. Report of a Nordic project group. Ed.: Oskarsson, A. Nordic Council of Ministers,  
1110 Copenhagen, Denmark.

1111 SCF (1993). Reports of the Scientific Committee for Food (31st series, 1993). Nutrient and Energy  
1112 Intakes for the European Community. Commission of the European Communities.

1113 WHO (1983). World Health Organization, IPCS INCHEM. Iron. Food Additives Series, No. 18, Iron.  
1114 Available at <https://inchem.org/documents/jecfa/jecmono/v18je18.htm>

1115 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality: fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
1116 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at  
1117 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

## 1118 Magnesium (Mg)

1119 Magnesium is an alkaline earth metal. It is the eighth most abundant element in the Earth's crust and  
1120 the third most common metal after aluminium and iron. It is also the third most important component  
1121 of salts dissolved in seawater. Magnesium is a metal that has few useful mechanical characteristics  
1122 but is very light (one-third lighter than aluminium), is silvery-white in colour and tarnishes slightly on  
1123 exposure to air.

### 1124 Sources and levels of intake

1125 Magnesium is widely used in medicine and pharmacology. It plays a very important role in the human  
1126 diet. Many disorders can result from lack of magnesium: depression and anxiety, diabetes, muscle  
1127 spasms, cramps, cardiovascular disorders, high blood pressure and osteoporosis. It plays an active role  
1128 in inter-neuronal data transmission (Giannini, 1997; Giannini, 2000).

1129 Excess consumption is naturally eliminated. Intake of large quantities of magnesium causes diarrhoea.  
1130 Magnesium is effectively filtered by the kidneys in adults, but poisoning by excessive magnesium can  
1131 occur in children and in cases of renal insufficiency (Kontani et al., 2005).

1132 Magnesium hydroxide  $Mg(OH)_2$ , which is obtained by a reaction between sodium hydroxide and  
1133 magnesium salt, is used in medicine as an antacid and also as a laxative (milk of magnesia) and in sugar  
1134 refining.

1135 Seafood (apart from winkles) contains 410 mg/100 g, and there is no doubt that this is the food source  
1136 richest in magnesium, followed by molasses (from 197 to 242 mg/100 g), cocoa (from 150 to 400  
1137 mg/100 g) and whole grains (from 100 to 150 mg/100 g). However, the polysaccharides and phytic  
1138 acids that the latter contain impede magnesium absorption, especially in the case of yeasted  
1139 wholemeal bread. Spinach contains between 50 and 100 mg/100 g, but it also contains oxalic acid that  
1140 can inhibit magnesium assimilation. Fish, offal and bolted cereals contain between 25 and 50 mg/100  
1141 g of magnesium. A few other foodstuffs also contain magnesium, e.g. greens, buckwheat, broad beans,  
1142 almonds, Nigari (magnesium chloride) and bananas.

1143 ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 304 mg/person/day in adults and 227 mg/person/day in  
1144 children. Highest concentrations in the French TDS were measured in tofu (1340 mg/kg), chocolate  
1145 (1143 mg/kg), molluscs and crustaceans (811 mg/kg) and cookies (514 mg/kg).

## 1146 **Metallic food contact materials**

1147 Magnesium is mainly used in aluminium-magnesium alloys. It is also used in the iron and steel industry  
1148 to eliminate sulphur. It can be used in the manufacturing of spheroidal graphite cast iron, in which the  
1149 graphite takes the form of nodules (spheroids) or cast iron (iron and steel industry).

1150 Magnesium is widely used in aluminium-based alloys for permanent set yielding, facilitating the  
1151 manufacturing of profiles or beverage cans, which consume large quantities of the metal (Luo and  
1152 Powell, 2001).

## 1153 **Other food contact materials**

1154 No information available.

## 1155 **Release**

1156 No information available.

## 1157 **Safety aspects**

1158 – SCF (2001) established a tolerable upper limit of 250 mg Mg per day for readily dissociable  
1159 magnesium salts and compounds like MgO in nutritional supplements, water, or added to food and  
1160 beverages. This upper limit does not include Mg normally present in foods and beverages.

1161 – Magnesium is used in the production of many alloys, particularly aluminium alloys. It may  
1162 constitute 11% of some alloys. SCF (2001) and AFSSA (France) (2001) recommended that daily intake  
1163 should not exceed 700 mg/day. The Belgian Royal Decree of 30 May 2021 relating to the placing on  
1164 the market of nutrients and food products with added nutrients sets the maximum authorised intake  
1165 via food supplements at 450 mg/day (Recommended Daily Intake).

1166 – The UK EVM assessed magnesium and considered there to be insufficient data to derive a  
1167 safe upper level (EVM, 2003). On the basis of the available data from one study showing only mild  
1168 reversible diarrhoea in a small percentage of people supplementing magnesium at around 400  
1169 mg/person/day, this level of magnesium supplementation was considered to be without significant  
1170 adverse effects. This corresponds to 6.7 mg/kg body weight/day for a 60 kg adult.

## 1171 **Conclusions and recommendations**

1172 “deriving the SRL for magnesium was unnecessary”

1173 With regard to the safety aspects mentioned above, it can be assumed that release of magnesium  
1174 from food contact materials made from metals and alloys at a level where adverse effects occur is not  
1175 likely. Therefore, it was concluded that deriving an SRL was unnecessary.

## 1176           **References**

- 1177   AFSSA-CNERNA-CNRS (2001). Recommended dietary allowances for the French population, 3<sup>rd</sup>  
1178   edition, Co-ord. A. Martin, Eds. tech doc, 2001.
- 1179   ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
1180   persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.
- 1181   Belgian Royal Decree of 3 March 1992 on marketing of nutriments and foodstuffs with added  
1182   nutriments (Belgian Official Journal of 15 April 1992).
- 1183   Belgian Royal Decree of 30 May 2021 relating to the placing on the market of nutrients and food  
1184   products with added nutrients. Available at (in Dutch and French)  
1185   [https://www.health.belgium.be/sites/default/files/uploads/fields/fpshealth\\_theme\\_file/2021\\_05\\_30\\_ar\\_nutriments\\_kb\\_nutrienten\\_mb\\_bs\\_11\\_06\\_2021.pdf](https://www.health.belgium.be/sites/default/files/uploads/fields/fpshealth_theme_file/2021_05_30_ar_nutriments_kb_nutrienten_mb_bs_11_06_2021.pdf)  
1186
- 1187   EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
1188   Available at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/vitmin2003.pdf>
- 1189   Giannini, A.J. (1997). Drugs of Abuse. Second Edition. Los Angeles, Physicians Management  
1190   Information Co.
- 1191   Giannini, A.J., Bowman, R.K., Melemis, S.M. (2000). Magnesium oxide enhances verapamil-  
1192   maintenance therapy in chronic manic patients. *Psychiatry Research*. 93:83-87.
- 1193   Kontani, M., Hara, A., Ohta, S., Ikeda, T. (2005). Hypermagnesemia induced by massive cathartic  
1194   ingestion in an elderly woman without pre-existing renal dysfunction. *Intern. Med.* 44 (5): 448–52.
- 1195   Luo, A.A., Powell, B.R. (2001). Tensile and Compressive Creep of Magnesium-Aluminium-Calcium  
1196   Based Alloys. Materials & Processes Laboratory, General Motors Research & Development Center.
- 1197   SCF (2001). Opinion of the Scientific Committee on Food on the tolerable upper intake level of  
1198   magnesium (expressed on 26 September 2001), SCF/CS/NUT/UPPLEV/54 Final 11 October 2001.

## 1199           **Manganese (Mn)**

1200   Manganese is an essential element as a micronutrient involved in different enzymatic activities  
1201   (carbohydrates and lipids metabolism, bones formation, healing process, antioxidants protection,  
1202   etc.). It is widely distributed in the environment, comprising approximately 0.1% of the Earth's crust  
1203   (Florence and Batley, 1980). About 90% of total manganese production is used in steel manufacture  
1204   as a deoxidising and desulphurising additive and as an alloying constituent (Beliles, 1994; Saric, 1986).  
1205   Manganese exists in two common oxidation states, as manganese (II) and manganese (IV) (Florence  
1206   and Batley, 1980).

## 1207           **Sources and levels of intake**

1208   Manganese is present in most foodstuffs. The main contributors of manganese to the diet are cereals  
1209   (10-30 mg/kg) as well as vegetables and fruits (0.5-5 mg/kg) (Beliles, 1994). Nuts may also have a high

1210 content of manganese. In some countries, manganese has replaced organic lead as an additive in  
1211 petrol. This may result in increasing concentrations of manganese in the environment and in  
1212 foodstuffs in the future.

1213 The average intake is 2-3 mg/day (SCF, 1993). The British total diet study reported that the highest  
1214 total mean and 97.5th percentile exposures were in the 1.5 to 3 years age class and were 160 µg/kg  
1215 bw/day and 270 µg/kg bw/day, respectively. The highest contributing food group to total mean  
1216 exposure was the 'non-alcoholic beverages' group with a mean exposure of 43 µg/kg bw/day (FSA,  
1217 2014).

1218 In the French total diet study (ANSES, 2011), the highest manganese concentrations were measured  
1219 in dry fruits and oil seeds (11.9 mg/kg), chocolate (8.87 mg/kg) and bread and bakery products (7.19  
1220 mg/kg). The main contributors to manganese exposure were bread (29%) and bakery products (20%).  
1221 It was established that the manganese mean exposures were 2.16 mg/day for adults and 1.46 mg/day  
1222 for children. Considering the 95th percentile, the manganese mean exposures were 3.55 mg/day and  
1223 2.56 mg /day for adults and children respectively.

1224 The EFSA Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies (NDA) (EFSA, 2013) proposed as Adequate  
1225 Intake (AI) of 3 mg/day for adults including pregnant and lactating women (equal to the mean intake  
1226 in EU). For infants aged from 7 to 11 months, an AI of 0.02–0.5 mg/day was proposed, which reflects  
1227 the wide range of manganese intakes that appear to be adequate for this age group.

1228 In the infant diet study (ANSES, 2016) focusing on the 0 to 3 years old population, the highest  
1229 manganese concentrations were measured in sweet and salty biscuits (6.26 mg/kg), bread and bakery  
1230 product (5.17 mg/kg) and pastry (3.64 mg/kg). For children between 1 and 4 months, the main  
1231 contributors to manganese exposures were first infant formulae (74%) and infant cereals (14%).  
1232 Between 5 and 6 months, main contributors were follow-on formulae (21%) and infant cereals (15%).  
1233 Between 7 and 12 months, main contributors were meat/vegetables and fish/vegetables jars (16%),  
1234 infant cereals (13%) and fruits (11%). Between 13 and 36 months, main contributors were vegetables  
1235 (14%), fruits (12%) and pasta (10%). It was estimated that the manganese mean exposures varied from  
1236 0.126 to 0.653 mg/day according to the age group. Considering the 90<sup>th</sup> percentile, the manganese  
1237 mean exposures varied from 0.348 to 1.26 mg /day according to the age group.

## 1238 **Metallic food contact materials**

1239 Manganese is used in steel and other alloys (Saric, 1986).

## 1240 **Other food contact materials**

1241 Manganese is used in the manufacture of glass to bleach out the colour of any iron present (Saric,  
1242 1986). Manganese is used in pigments, glazes, and other products.

## 1243 Release

1244 Release of manganese from six types of stainless steels containing 0.21-2.0 wt % manganese was  
1245 examined in drinking water and in waters with 500 mg/L chloride or 3 mg/L “free” chlorine. The  
1246 release of manganese was below 0.002 mg/L in all tests (Lewus et al., 1998).

## 1247 Safety aspects

1248 – The JECFA has not evaluated manganese.

1249 – SCF (1993) recommends 1-10 mg/day as the acceptable range of intake.

1250 – SCF (1996) recommends a maximum limit of 0.5 mg/L for manganese in natural mineral  
1251 waters.

1252 – In its 2001 recommendation, the AFSSA (France) set a safety limit of 10 mg/day (AFSSA-  
1253 CNERNA-CNRS, 2001). In the total infant study, a security upper limit of 2 mg/day (fixed by the institute  
1254 of medicine) was retained by ANSES for the 1-3 years old infant (ANSES, 2016).

1255 – The Belgian Royal Decree of 30 May 2021 sets the maximum authorised intake via food  
1256 supplements at 1 mg/day (RDI – Recommended Daily Intake).

1257 – WHO (2003) derived a limit of 0.06 mg/kg body weight/day (3.6 mg/day) within the drinking-  
1258 water guidelines. This limit was derived from the average nutritional intake of manganese for an adult  
1259 of 11 mg/day and an uncertainty factor of 3 (for the possible higher bio-availability of manganese in  
1260 water) and resulted in a guidance value of 0.4 mg/L. However, in the 2011 revision of the guidelines,  
1261 the WHO stated that this “health-based value is well above concentrations of manganese normally  
1262 found in drinking-water, it is not considered necessary to derive a formal guideline value” (WHO, 2011,  
1263 2017).

1264 – Both SCF (2000) and EFSA (2006) concluded that an upper level of manganese cannot be set  
1265 due to the limitations of the human data and the non-availability of NOAELs for critical endpoints from  
1266 animal studies, thereby producing a considerable degree of uncertainty. To date, the lowest-adverse-  
1267 effect-levels (LOAELs) following oral administration observed are 0.28 mg/kg body weight/day in  
1268 growing male rats and 0.36 mg/kg body weight/day in adult female rats (SCF, 2000; EFSA, 2006).

1269 – Manganese is an essential trace element that plays a role in bone mineralisation, protein  
1270 and energy metabolism, metabolic regulation, cellular protection from damaging free radicals, and  
1271 the formation of glycosaminoglycans (ATSDR, 2008). Although manganese is an essential nutrient,  
1272 exposure to high levels via inhalation or ingestion may cause some adverse health effects (ATSDR,  
1273 2008). Excess of manganese affects the central nervous system and neurological effects have been  
1274 observed in cases of occupational exposure. No problems have been reported in connection with  
1275 dietary intake of manganese, since manganese is considered one of the least toxic metals. Consistent  
1276 with its role as an essential element, manganese and its inorganic compounds have a relatively low  
1277 order of acute toxicity (Beliles, 1994). However, absorption is increased in individuals with iron  
1278 deficiency (Beliles, 1994). In humans, the degree of manganese absorption from the gastrointestinal  
1279 system is generally low, in the order of 3% (Beliles, 1994).

1280 – The EVM could not derive an upper intake limit (EVM, 2003). However, guidance levels  
1281 where no adverse effects are expected were derived using two retrospective studies. In these studies,  
1282 the cohorts were exposed to either two or three different concentrations, respectively, of manganese  
1283 in drinking water. The study using three different manganese concentrations found significant  
1284 neurological effects and symptoms in the highest exposure group. Based on the NOAEL for these  
1285 effects, the EVM derived a guidance level for older people of 0.15 mg/kg body weight/day (9 mg/day).  
1286 No significant effects were observed at either concentration in the second study. Hence, the EVM  
1287 derived a guidance level for the general population of 0.2 mg/kg body weight/day (12 mg/day) using  
1288 the higher concentration.

1289 – ICH Q3D: Manganese is one of some elemental impurities for which PDEs have not been  
1290 established due to their low inherent toxicity and/or differences in regional regulations are not  
1291 addressed in this ICH guideline. If these elemental impurities are present or included in the drug  
1292 product they are addressed by other guidelines and/or regional regulations and practices that may be  
1293 applicable for particular elements.

1294 – In the ANSES opinion (2018) related to the maximal safety value of manganese in drinking  
1295 water, the toxicological reference value (TRV) of 55 µg/kg body weight./day established by the  
1296 national public health institute of Québec was selected (Valcke et al. 2018). This TRV was derived using  
1297 a LOAEL of 25 mg/kg b.w./day based on neurological effects observed in rats during development after  
1298 post-natal exposure (Kern et al., 2010 and 2011, Beaudin et al., 2013 and 2015).

## 1299 **Conclusions and recommendations**

1300 *“the SRL for manganese is set at 0.55 mg/kg”*

1301 The SRL is based on the toxicological reference value of 55 µg/kg b.w. /day established by the national  
1302 public health institute of Québec and since oral intake data from multiple European countries are not  
1303 available, an allowance of 20% for food contact materials is applied. Since the endpoint for the  
1304 calculation of this reference value was based on neurological effects observed during development  
1305 after post-natal exposure, the recommended SRL is calculated considering toddlers as target  
1306 population. Based on the food consumption values adopted by EFSA (2016), a toddler consumes 20 g  
1307 of foodstuffs (other than drinks and food specially intended for infants and toddlers) per kg body  
1308 weight per day. Consequently, the SRL for manganese is set at 0.55 mg/kg.

1309 Particularly for materials and articles intended for contact with milk, milk products and other non-  
1310 alcoholic drinks as well as any food especially intended for infants and toddlers the most conservative  
1311 consumption of 150 mg/kg body weight per day should be used and an SRL of 0.07 mg/kg food applies.

## 1312 **References**

1313 AFSSA-CNERNA-CNRS (2001). Recommended dietary allowances for the French population, 3rd  
1314 edition, Co-ord. A. Martin, Eds. tech doc, 2001.

1315 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
1316 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

- 1317 ANSES (2016). Infant total diet study, part 2, inorganic compounds.
- 1318 ANSES (2018) Opinion related to the determination of manganese maximal safety value allowed in  
1319 drinking water.
- 1320 ATSDR (2012). Toxicological profile for manganese. US Department of Health and Human Services.  
1321 Public Health Service. Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry. Available at  
1322 <https://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/ToxProfiles/tp151.pdf>
- 1323 Beaudin, S. A., S. Nisam, and D. R. Smith. 2013. "Early life versus lifelong oral manganese exposure  
1324 differently impairs skilled forelimb performance in adult rats." *Neurotoxicology and Teratology*  
1325 38:36-45.
- 1326 Beaudin S. A., B. J. Strupp, S. M. Lasley, C. A. Fornal, S. Mandal, and D. R. Smith. 2015. "Oral  
1327 methylphenidate alleviates the fine motor dysfunction caused by chronic postnatal manganese  
1328 exposure in adult rats." *Toxicological Sciences* 144 (2):318-27.
- 1329 Belgian Royal Decree relating to the placing on the market of nutrients and food products with added  
1330 nutrients. Available at (in Dutch and French)  
1331 [https://www.health.belgium.be/sites/default/files/uploads/fields/fpshealth\\_theme\\_file/2021\\_05\\_30\\_ar\\_nutriments\\_kb\\_nutrienten\\_mb\\_bs\\_11\\_06\\_2021.pdf](https://www.health.belgium.be/sites/default/files/uploads/fields/fpshealth_theme_file/2021_05_30_ar_nutriments_kb_nutrienten_mb_bs_11_06_2021.pdf)  
1332
- 1333 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology. Fourth Edition. Volume  
1334 2, part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
- 1335 EFSA (2006). Tolerable upper intake levels for vitamins and minerals. Scientific Committee on Food,  
1336 Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies. February 2006, Parma. Available at  
1337 <https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-/publication/3748ff41-1c4a-4232-8546-fb176a685e13>
- 1338 EFSA (2013) NDA Panel (EFSA Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies). Scientific Opinion  
1339 on Dietary Reference Values for manganese. *EFSA Journal* 2013;11(11):3419, 44.  
1340 DOI:10.2903/j.efsa.2013.3419
- 1341 EFSA (2016) Panel on Food Contact Materials, Enzymes, Flavourings and Processing Aids (CEF). Recent  
1342 developments in the risk assessment of chemicals in food and their potential impact on the safety  
1343 assessment of substances used in food contact materials. *EFSA Journal* 2016;14(1):4357. DOI:  
1344 10.2903/j.efsa.2016.4357
- 1345 EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
1346 Available at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/vitmin2003.pdf>
- 1347 Florence, T.M., Batley, G.E. (1980). Chemical speciation in natural waters. *CRC Critical Reviews in*  
1348 *Analytical Chemistry*. p. 219-296.
- 1349 FSA (2014). Measurement of the concentrations of metals and other elements from the 2014 UK total  
1350 diet study. Available at [https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)  
1351 [metals-and-other-elements](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)

- 1352 ICH harmonised guideline for elemental impurities ICH Q3D(R1) Final version Adopted on 22 March  
1353 2019. Available at <https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D->  
1354 R1EWG\_Document\_Step4\_Guideline\_2019\_0322.pdf
- 1355 Kern, C., G. Stanwood, and D. R. Smith. 2010. "Pre-weaning manganese exposure causes  
1356 hyperactivity, disinhibition, and spatial learning and memory deficits associated with altered  
1357 dopamine receptor and transporter levels." *Synapse* 64 (5):363-378
- 1358 Kern, C., and D. R. Smith. 2011. "Pre-weaning Mn exposure leads to prolonged astrocyte activation  
1359 and lasting effects on the dopaminergic system in adult male rats." *Synapse* 65 (6):532-544
- 1360 Lewus, M.O., Hambleton, R., Dulieu, D., Wilby, R.A. (1998). Behavior of ferritic, austenitic and duplex  
1361 stainless steels with different surface finishes in tests for metal release into potable waters based upon  
1362 the procedure BS7766:1994. *Stainless Steel Conference proceedings*.
- 1363 Saric, M. (1986). Manganese. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. *Handbook on the toxicology of*  
1364 *metals*. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.
- 1365 SCF (1993). Reports of the Scientific Committee for Food (31st series, 1993). Nutrient and Energy  
1366 Intakes for the European Community. Commission of the European Communities.
- 1367 SCF (1996). Scientific Committee for Food. Opinion on arsenic, barium, boron, fluoride and  
1368 manganese in natural mineral waters. CS/CNTM/NMW/%. Rev. 13, December 1996.
- 1369 SCF (2000). Opinion of the Scientific Committee on Food on the tolerable upper intake level of  
1370 manganese, European commission, 2000. SCF/CS/NUT/UPPLEV/21 Final 28 November 2000.
- 1371 Valcke M., Bourgault M.H., Haddad S., Bouchard M., Gauvin D., and Levallois P. (2018): Deriving A  
1372 Drinking Water Guideline for A Non-Carcinogenic Contaminant: The Case of Manganese. *Int J Environ*  
1373 *Res Public Health* 15 (6). DOI: 10.3390/ijerph15061293
- 1374 WHO (2003). Manganese in drinking-water. Background document for preparation of WHO  
1375 Guidelines for drinking-water quality. Geneva, World Health Organization  
1376 (WHO/SDE/WSH/03.04/104).
- 1377 WHO (2011). Guidelines for drinking-water quality. Fourth edition.
- 1378 WHO (2017): Guidelines for Drinking-water Quality fourth edition incorporating first addendum.  
1379 World Health Organization. ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at  
1380 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

## 1381 Molybdenum (Mo)

- 1382 Molybdenum does not occur naturally as a free metal on earth; it is found only in various oxidation  
1383 states in minerals. As free element, it is a hard silvery-grey metal with a density of 10.2 g/cm<sup>3</sup> (at room  
1384 temperature). Molybdenum is a trace element essential for nearly all organisms and forms the  
1385 catalytic centre of a large variety of enzymes such as nitrogenase, nitrate reductases, sulphite oxidase  
1386 and xanthine oxidoreductases (Schwarz et al., 2009). It is found ubiquitously in animals and plants.  
1387 The human body contains approximately 9 mg of Mo (Lide, 2006).

## 1388 Sources and levels of intake

1389 Some of the main natural sources of molybdenum are liver, peas, beans, spinach, wheat germ (Emsley,  
1390 2001), and dark leafy greens such as spinach and kale.

1391 The EFSA estimated oral intake for adults from food up to 500 µg/day, and for children age 1-3 years  
1392 old, up to 89 µg/day (EFSA, 2009). The 2006 British total diet study estimated the mean and high-level  
1393 intake for adults at 96.6-98.4 µg/person/day and 181.8-184.8 µg/person/day, as calculated using a  
1394 bodyweight of 60 kg and from the mean (1.61–1.64 µg/kg bw/day) and high (3.03–3.08 µg/kg bw/day)  
1395 level exposures, respectively (Rose et al., 2010). ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 93.9  
1396 µg/person/day in adults and the 95th percentile at 155 mg/person/day.

## 1397 Metallic food contact materials

1398 Molybdenum is used as an alloying addition in stainless steels that increases resistance to both  
1399 uniform and local (pitting and crevice) corrosion. The use of molybdenum-containing steel may be  
1400 required where contact is expected with highly corrosive liquids, like fruit juice, vinegar, wine and  
1401 carbonated beverages (Mason, 1948). The most commonly used molybdenum-containing material for  
1402 food contact applications is stainless steel 316 (2-2.5% Mo in an iron-alloy) and its derivatives, but  
1403 steels with higher or lower molybdenum percentages are used as well (Euro Inox, 2006). Hastelloy C-  
1404 276 (a highly corrosion resistant Ni-Cr-Mo-Fe alloy) has been used for coffee flash driers. While Inconel  
1405 and Hastelloy B & C have been used for the following food applications: fruit juice and syrups, pectin,  
1406 gelatin, salad dressings, vinegar, monosodium glutamate, baker's yeast and carbonated beverages  
1407 (Mason, 1948), stainless steel grade 316 (2-2.5% Mo) articles are also used for these food contact  
1408 applications, as they are highly resistant and do not corrode, even at high temperatures.. Molybdenum  
1409 is also an alloying element in nickel-based alloys used in food contact materials.

## 1410 Other food contact materials

1411 Molybdenum oxides are a constituent of pigments commonly used in ceramics used for food contact.

## 1412 Release

1413 Stainless steel grade 316L exposed to 5g/L citric acid for 2 hour at 70 °C followed by 10 days at 40 °C  
1414 released 0.02 µg/cm<sup>2</sup> of molybdenum (i.e. 0.012 mg/6 dm<sup>2</sup>) (Hedburg et al, 2014). Stainless steel grade  
1415 316L exposed to 1% lactic acid or 0.01% HCl for 1 week at 37 °C released 0.2 µg/cm<sup>2</sup> or 0.06 µg/cm<sup>2</sup> of  
1416 molybdenum, respectively (Okazaki and Gotoh, 2005). The pH of 1% lactic acid and 0.01% HCl  
1417 solutions is comparable to that of 5 g/L citric acid (i.e. pH of 2.4).

## 1418 Safety aspects

1419 — SCF (2000) and EFSA (2006) laid down an upper limit for molybdenum of 0.6 mg/day. This  
1420 limit was based on an uncertainty factor of 100 using a NOAEL of 0.9 mg/kg body weight/day from a  
1421 9-week study in rats (incorporating an uncertainty factor of 10 for the additive effect of Cu deficiency  
1422 in metabolism and an uncertainty factor of 10 for the effects on human reproduction). Furthermore,  
1423 for children aged 1-3 years an upper limit of 0.1 mg/day was extrapolated from the adult upper limit

1424 due to adverse effects on growth seen in young rats. EFSA (2009) confirmed these derived upper limits  
1425 in an opinion of the ANS Panel.

1426 — The EVM assessed molybdenum and determined that there was insufficient data to derive a  
1427 safe upper level (EVM, 2003). One study reported that intakes of 1 mg/person/day and above could  
1428 be associated with gout-like symptoms. However, the intake of molybdenum in the UK diet (maximum  
1429 0.23 mg/person/day) was not expected to present a risk.

1430 — Molybdenum is used in the synthesis of pharmaceutical substances (Mo combinations such as  
1431 Bi-Mo, Fe-Mo, molybdenum oxide and Mo-complexes, are being used as catalysts in organic synthesis)  
1432 and is included in the ICH Q3D. That Guideline classifies molybdenum in Class 3, metals of relatively  
1433 low toxicity. That Guideline sets an oral Permitted Daily Exposure (PDE) of 3400 µg Mo/day for a 50  
1434 kg individual, based on a NOAEL of 17 mg Mo/kg/day from a 90-day toxicity study in the rat with  
1435 dietary sodium molybdate dehydrate (Murray et al., 2014); bodyweight of 50 kg and a safety factor of  
1436 250.

## 1437 **Conclusions and recommendations**

1438 “the SRL for molybdenum is set at 0.12 mg/kg”

1439 The SRL is calculated from the upper limit derived by EFSA (2006, 2009) of 0.6 mg/day, which agrees  
1440 with the tolerable daily intake (oral exposure) of 10 µg/kg bw/day reported by RIVM (2001).

1441 Intake data from multiple European countries was provided by the EFSA (2009). However, the data  
1442 used by the EFSA in 2009 was brought forward from earlier SCF opinions and contained data  
1443 originating from the 1980s.

1444 Since newer intake data was only available from two European countries, the default allowance of  
1445 20% for exposure to food contact materials and articles made from metals and alloys was applied to  
1446 the upper limit of 0.6 mg/day. Consequently, assuming that a person of 60 kg body weight consumes  
1447 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared with food contact materials made from  
1448 metals and alloys, the SRL for molybdenum is set at 0.12 mg/kg.

1449 Children are not considered as a vulnerable sub-population because of the negligible exposure of  
1450 children to food contact materials and articles containing molybdenum (Foster et al., 2010).

## 1451 **References**

1452 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
1453 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

1454 EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
1455 Available at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/vitmin2003.pdf>

1456 EFSA (2006). Tolerable upper intake levels for vitamins and minerals. Scientific Committee on Food,  
1457 Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies. February 2006, Parma. Available at  
1458 <https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-/publication/3748ff41-1c4a-4232-8546-fb176a685e13>

- 1459 EFSA (2009). Scientific Opinion of the Panel on Food Additives and Nutrient Sources added to Food on  
1460 potassium molybdate as a source of molybdenum added for nutritional purposes to food supplements  
1461 following a request from the European Commission. The EFSA Journal (2009) 1136, 1-21. DOI:  
1462 10.2903/j.efsa.2009.1136.
- 1463 Emsley, J. (2001). Nature's Building Blocks. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 262-266. 0-19-850341-5.
- 1464 Euro Inox (2006). Stainless Steel in the Food and Beverage Industry. Materials and Applications Series,  
1465 Volume 7, First Edition.
- 1466 Foster, E., Mathers, J.C., Adamson, A.J. (2010). Packaged food intake by British children aged 0 to 6  
1467 years. Food Additives and Contaminants – Part A Chemistry, Analysis, Control, Exposure and Risk  
1468 Assessment, 27 (3), 380-388.
- 1469 Hedberg Y, Mazinianian N, Odnevall Wallinder I, (2014). Compliance tests of stainless steel as a food  
1470 contact material using the CoE test guideline; KTH Royal Institute of Technology, 15-12-2014.
- 1471 ICH harmonised guideline for elemental impurities ICH Q3D(R1) Final version Adopted on 22 March  
1472 2019. Available at <https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D->  
1473 R1EWG\_Document\_Step4\_Guideline\_2019\_0322.pdf
- 1474 Lide, D.R. (2006). CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics, 7, Chemical Rubber Publishing Company,  
1475 pp. 18, 0-8493-0487-3. Available at <https://ceramica.fandom.com/wiki/Molybdenum>, accessed 20  
1476 September 2021.
- 1477 Mason, J.F. (1948). The Resistance of Alloys to Corrosion During the Processing of Some Foods;  
1478 Corrosion, 4(7) , 305-320. Available at <https://doi.org/10.5006/0010-9312-4.7.305>
- 1479 Murray FJ, Sullivan FM, Tiwary AK, Carey S. 90 Day subchronic toxicity study of sodium molybdate  
1480 dihydrate in rats. Regul Toxicol Pharmacol 2013. Available at  
1481 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.yrtph.2013.09.003>
- 1482 Okazaki, Y. Gotoh, E. (2005) Comparison of metal release from various metallic biomaterials in vitro.  
1483 Biomaterials Volume 26, January 2005, p. 11-21. Available at  
1484 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biomaterials.2004.02.005>
- 1485 RIVM (2001). Re-evaluation of human-toxicological maximum permissible risk levels. RIVM Report  
1486 711701025.
- 1487 Rose, M., Baxter, M., Brereton, N., Baskaran C. (2010). Dietary exposure to metals and other elements  
1488 in the 2006 UK Total Diet Study and some trends over the last 30 years. Food Additives and  
1489 Contaminants, 2010, 27 (10), pp.1380. Available at <https://doi.org/10.1080/19440049.2010.496794>
- 1490 SCF (2000). Opinion of the Scientific Committee on Food on the tolerable upper intake levels of  
1491 Molybdenum, European Commission.
- 1492 Schwarz G., Mendel R.R. and Ribbe M.W. (2009) Molybdenum cofactors, enzymes and pathways.  
1493 Nature Vol. 460, pp 839–847. Available at <https://www.nature.com/articles/nature08302>

## 1494 Nickel (Ni)

1495 Nickel, combined with other elements, occurs naturally in the Earth's crust, is found in all soils, and is  
1496 also emitted from volcanoes. Nickel is the 24th most abundant element and, in the environment,  
1497 nickel is found primarily as oxides or sulphides (ATSDR, 2005). There has been a growing interest in  
1498 the possible effects of nickel in foodstuffs, i.e. a possible worsening of nickel-related dermatitis. Nickel  
1499 is an essential micronutrient for higher plants and some animal species but there are no data proving  
1500 that it is essential for humans (EFSA 2015).

### 1501 Sources and levels of intake

1502 In a monitoring program initiated in 1990 in Denmark, nickel was found in small quantities in many  
1503 foodstuffs (0.001-0.01 mg/kg) and in higher concentrations in foodstuffs such as grains, nuts, cocoa  
1504 products and seeds (up to 0.8 mg/kg) (National Food Agency of Denmark, 1995). At FoodEx level 1,  
1505 high mean levels of Ni were reported for 'Legumes, nuts and oilseeds' (c.a. 2 mg/kg), certain types of  
1506 chocolate (cocoa) products (3.8 mg/kg), and 'Cocoa beans and cocoa products' (9.5 mg/kg) (EFSA,  
1507 2015).

1508 In the diet it is found as complex bound Ni<sup>2+</sup>-ions. The British total diet study (2006) estimated mean  
1509 and high nickel intake levels for adults to be 0.09-0.1 mg/day (1.49-1.63 µg/kg body weight/day) and  
1510 0.18 mg/day (3.01-3.08 µg/kg body weight/day), respectively (FSA, 2009). In the 2014 UK Total Diet  
1511 Study (FSA, 2019) the highest total mean and 97.5th percentile nickel exposures were in the 1.5 to 3  
1512 years age class and were 4.4-5.2 µg/kg bw/day and 7.1-8.1 µg/kg bw/day, respectively. For elder  
1513 children, adolescents and adults the 97.5<sup>th</sup> percentile nickel exposures were in the range of 3.2-7.3  
1514 µg/kg bw/day.

1515 ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 2.33 µg/kg body weight/day in adults and 3.83 µg/kg  
1516 body weight/day in children. In the total infant study, these mean exposures were used (ANSES, 2016).  
1517 Exposure at the 95<sup>th</sup> percentile were 3.76 and 7.44 µg/kg bw/d for adults and children, respectively.  
1518 For these populations, nickel exceedance in food (naturally occurring in food) was observed (Sirost et  
1519 al., 2018).

1520 EFSA (2015) estimated chronic dietary exposure to Ni combining food mean occurrence data with food  
1521 consumption data at the individual level. Mean chronic dietary exposure to nickel, across the different  
1522 dietary surveys and age classes, ranged from 2.0 (minimum lower bound (LB), 'Elderly') to 13.1 µg/kg  
1523 body weight (b.w.) per day (maximum upper bound (UB), 'Toddlers'). The 95th percentile dietary  
1524 exposure ranged from 3.6 (minimum LB, 'Elderly') to 20.1 µg/kg b.w. per day (maximum UB,  
1525 'Toddlers'). In the update of its risk assessment EFSA (2020) confirmed these values on a slightly higher  
1526 level. The exposure in the update ranged from 1.57 (minimum mean lower bound (LB), 'Elderly') to  
1527 14.6 µg/kg body weight (b.w.) per day (maximum mean upper bound (UB), 'Toddlers'). The 95th  
1528 percentile dietary exposure ranged from 3.55 (minimum LB, 'Elderly') to 24.8 µg/kg b.w. per day  
1529 (maximum UB, 'Toddlers'). The highest exposure was found for toddlers and other children.

## 1530 **Metallic food contact materials**

1531 85% of the world-wide production of nickel is used for the manufacturing of alloys, 9% for plating and  
1532 6% for other uses (e.g. batteries) (Nickel Institute, 2011). There are at least 3,000 different alloys  
1533 containing nickel. The major use of nickel is in the production of high-quality, corrosion resistant alloys  
1534 with iron, copper, aluminium, chromium, zinc and molybdenum. Most nickel-containing food contact  
1535 materials are stainless steels.

1536 Nickel-containing stainless steels (see Chapter 2, Stainless steels) are important food contact materials  
1537 used for transport, e.g. in milk trucks, for processing equipment, e.g. in the dairy and chocolate  
1538 industry, in processing of fruit such as apples, grapes, oranges and tomatoes, for containers such as  
1539 wine tanks, for brew kettles and beer kegs, for processing of dry foods such as cereals, flour and sugar,  
1540 for utensils such as blenders and bread-dough mixers, in slaughterhouses, in fish processing, for nearly  
1541 all of the equipment in professional kitchens such as restaurants and hospitals, for electric kettles,  
1542 cookware and kitchen appliances of all kinds such as sinks and drains, for bowls, knives, spoons and  
1543 forks).

1544 Other nickel-containing food contact materials include German silver (also known as nickel silver and  
1545 Maillechort), which is used for cutlery and as a base for silverware; and nickel bronze (also known as  
1546 Dairy bronze and Thai bronze), which is used for cutlery and dairy equipment (see Chapter 2, Alloys).

1547 Nickel-plated items are less durable, less corrosion-resistant than stainless steel and are therefore not  
1548 commonly used for articles in contact with food and drink. For chromium-plated objects, the materials  
1549 are consecutively given a copper, nickel and then a chromium layer. Typical food contact materials  
1550 and articles are kitchen utensils and nickel-plated heating coils in electric kettles. The latter are now  
1551 rare; concealed (stainless steel) heating coils make de-scaling of kettles much easier.

## 1552 **Other food contact materials**

1553 Nickelous oxide, NiO, is used in the production of enamel frits and ceramic glazes, and in glass  
1554 manufacture (Beliles, 1994). Basic nickel carbonate is used in colouring ceramics and glazes (Beliles,  
1555 1994).

## 1556 **Release**

1557 A study comparing foods prepared in different stainless steel and glass pans found a higher nickel  
1558 content in the stainless-steel-cooked foods. However, the additional contribution from the stainless  
1559 steel represented only a minor fraction of the nickel content in the foods (Accominotti, 1998). In a  
1560 similar study, acidic foods such as rhubarb cooked in new stainless steel pans only showed significant  
1561 pick-up of nickel during the first cooking operation (Flint, 1997). Using boiling 5% acetic acid as a  
1562 simulant for 5 minutes in stainless steel pans, nickel release ranged between 0.08 and 0.21 mg/kg  
1563 (Kuligowski, 1992). A survey of teapots showed nickel release between 1.2 mg/L and 35 mg/L using a  
1564 citric acid solution (1 g/L) as a simulant and a contact time of 30 min. (Bolle, 2011). For the years 2012

1565 to 2018, RASFF shows 145 notifications for nickel release. Release value up to 1634.9 mg/kg was  
1566 reported in 2014 for a bottle stopper<sup>5</sup>.

## 1567 Safety aspects

1568 — JECFA has not evaluated nickel.

1569 — In 2008, AFSSA set a tolerable daily intake at 22 µg/kg bw/d, based on a 2-generations rat  
1570 study.

1571 — EFSA (2005) could not derive a tolerable upper intake level for nickel in the evaluation of  
1572 safety of fortified foods and food supplements due to the absence of adequate dose-response data  
1573 for dermal reactions in nickel-sensitised subjects.

1574 — EFSA (2015) (updated in 2018): The CONTAM Panel identified reproductive and  
1575 developmental toxicity as the critical effect for the risk characterization of chronic oral exposure to Ni.  
1576 The Panel derived a tolerable daily intake (TDI) of 2.8 µg Ni/kg b.w. /day from a BMDL10 of 0.28 mg  
1577 Ni/kg b.w. /day as calculated from the dose response analysis of the incidence of post-implantation  
1578 fetal loss in rats, applying the default uncertainty factor of 100 to allow for interspecies differences  
1579 and human variability.

1580 — The BfR (Tietz et al, 2018) reported a refinement of the modelling performed by EFSA (2015)  
1581 using a nested data approach, which includes litter effects and outlier treatment. The modelling  
1582 procedure used was in accordance with the EFSA opinion on BMD Modelling (EFSA, 2017). The TDI of  
1583 11 µg/kg bw/day derived was in accordance with conclusions from other studies.

1584 — EFSA (2020) updated the previous Scientific Opinion (EFSA, 2015), taking into account new  
1585 occurrence data, the updated benchmark dose (BMD) Guidance and any newly available scientific  
1586 information. The critical effect for chronic exposure was confirmed to be post implantation loss and  
1587 perinatal death of fetuses (as used in the previous Opinions). The Panel derived a TDI of 13 µg Ni/kg  
1588 b.w. /day from a BMDL10 of 1.3 mg Ni/kg b.w. /day, applying the default uncertainty factor of 100 to  
1589 account for interspecies differences and human variability.

1590 — The absorption and retention of nickel in the gastrointestinal tract is influenced by fasting and  
1591 food intake. Food intake and gastric emptying are of substantial significance for the bio availability of  
1592 nickel from aqueous solutions. The absorption of free nickel ions released in the gastrointestinal tract  
1593 may be 40 times higher than that of complex bound nickel from foodstuffs (Sunderman et al., 1989).  
1594 The absorption of nickel from drinking-water is increased by fasting (Nielsen et al., 1999). Up to 10%  
1595 of inorganic nickel compounds are absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract (Norseth, 1986). Nickel  
1596 intake via foodstuffs does not cause hazards for the majority of consumers. A subgroup of the  
1597 population (approximately 10%, mainly women) has contact allergies to nickel. Sensitisation against  
1598 nickel is caused by exposure through skin or by inhalation (EFSA, 2015). However, some patients with

---

<sup>5</sup> Report by the Slovenian CD-P-MCA delegation (January 2019) from RASFF Notifications for nickel 2012-2018.

1599 certain types of nickel dermatitis may get a flare-up of eczema through oral ingestion of even small  
1600 amounts of nickel, e.g. from foodstuffs rich in nickel or foodstuffs or drinks contaminated by nickel-  
1601 containing materials (Veien, 1989; Veien and Menné, 1990).

1602 — WHO (2017) has derived a TDI of 0.012 mg/kg body weight/day (0.7 mg/day) from human  
1603 data. This value was derived from the LOAEL of 0.012 mg/kg body weight/day from an oral provocation  
1604 study using fasting individuals with an allergy against nickel (Nielsen, 1999). Because the LOAEL was  
1605 based on a highly susceptible population, the WHO stated that no additional uncertainty factor was  
1606 necessary.

1607 — The EVM also assessed nickel and while they could not derive a safe upper level, they  
1608 determined that intakes of 0.0043 mg/kg body weight/ day would not be expected to affect non-  
1609 sensitised individuals (EVM, 2003). This guidance is based on a LOAEL for increased perinatal mortality  
1610 in a multi-generation rat study of 1.3 mg/kg b.w. /day and using uncertainty factors of 10 for inter-  
1611 species variation, 10 for intra-species variation and 3 for extrapolation of a LOAEL to a NOAEL.

1612 — In their 2008 statement, the COT considered that UK dietary exposures above the EVM  
1613 guidance level but within the WHO TDI of 0.012 mg/kg b.w. /day were unlikely to be of toxicological  
1614 concern, though they noted that nickel may exacerbate contact dermatitis/eczema in presensitised  
1615 individuals (COT, 2008). The COT had previously concluded that pre-school children (who have the  
1616 highest exposures) are less likely than adults to be sensitised and would therefore not be considered  
1617 to be a sensitive sub-group.

1618 — According to ICH Q3D, the oral nickel PDE is 220 µg/day. Nickel as Ni-Al alloys is being used as  
1619 catalyst in hydrogenation reactions.

## 1620 **Conclusions and recommendations**

1621 “the SRL for nickel is set at 0.14 mg/kg”

1622 Two very close and conservative TDI values, the EFSA TDI of 0.013 mg/kg body weight/day and the  
1623 WHO TDI of 0.012 mg/kg body weight/day (0.7 mg/day), which are based on human data from nickel-  
1624 sensitised individuals, have been reported in literature. The WHO TDI was used to derive the SRL.

1625 The default allowance of 20% for exposure through food contact materials and articles made from  
1626 metals and alloys was applied to the TDI. Assuming that a person of 60 kg body weight consumes 1 kg  
1627 of foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared with food contact materials made from metals  
1628 and alloys, the SRL is set at 0.14 mg/kg.

1629 Care has to be taken to ensure that nickel-plated articles for direct contact with foodstuffs comply  
1630 with the SRL for nickel.

## 1631 **References**

1632 Accominotti, M., Bost, M., Haudrechy, P., Mantout, B., Cunat, P.J., Comet, F., Mouterde, C., Plantard,  
1633 F., Chambon, P., Vallon, J.J., (1998). Contribution to chromium and nickel enrichment during cooking  
1634 of foods in stainless steel utensils. *Contact Dermatitis*, 38 (6), pp. 305-310.

- 1635 AFSSA (2008) Opinion of 1 July 2008 on the application of general information on the toxicity of nickel  
1636 in the food chain.
- 1637 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
1638 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.
- 1639 ANSES (2016). Étude de l'alimentation totale infantile. Available (in French) at  
1640 <https://www.anses.fr/en/system/files/ERCA2010SA0317Ra.pdf>
- 1641 ATSDR (2005). Toxicological profile for nickel. US Department of Health and Human Services. Public  
1642 Health Service. Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry. Available at  
1643 [www.atsdr.cdc.gov/toxprofiles/tp15.pdf](http://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/toxprofiles/tp15.pdf)
- 1644 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology. Fourth Edition. Volume  
1645 2, part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
- 1646 Bolle, F., Brian, W., Petit, D., Boutakhrit, K., Feraille, G., van Loco, J. (2011). Tea brewed in traditional  
1647 metallic teapots as a significant source of lead, nickel and other chemical elements. Food Additives  
1648 and Contaminants – Part A Chemistry, Analysis, Control, Exposure and Risk Assessment, 28 (9), pp.  
1649 1287-1293.
- 1650 COT (2008). COT Statement on the 2006 UK Total Diet Study of Metals and Other Elements. Available  
1651 at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/cot/cotstatementtds200808.pdf>
- 1652 EFSA (2005) Tolerable Upper Intake Level of Nickel, Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and  
1653 Allergies (NDA), EFSA Journal Volume 3, Issue, February 2005
- 1654 EFSA (2015) Nickel in food and drinking water, Panel on Contaminants in the Food Chain (CONTAM),  
1655 EFSA Journal 2015;13(2):4002. DOI: 10.2903/j.efsa.2015.4002EFSA (2006). Tolerable upper intake  
1656 levels for vitamins and minerals, Scientific Committee on Food, Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products,  
1657 Nutrition and Allergies. February 2006. Available at [https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-](https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-/publication/3748ff41-1c4a-4232-8546-fb176a685e13)  
1658 [/publication/3748ff41-1c4a-4232-8546-fb176a685e13](https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-/publication/3748ff41-1c4a-4232-8546-fb176a685e13)
- 1659 EFSA (2017) Update: Guidance on the use of the benchmark dose approach in risk assessment. EFSA  
1660 Journal 2017;15(1):465. DOI: 10.2903/j.efsa.2017.4658
- 1661 EFSA (2020) Scientific Opinion on the update of the risk assessment of nickel in food and drinking  
1662 water, Panel on Contaminants in the Food Chain (CONTAM), EFSA Journal 2020;18(11):6268. DOI:  
1663 10.2903/j.efsa.2020.6268
- 1664 EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
1665 Available at <http://cot.food.gov.uk/pdfs/vitmin2003.pdf>
- 1666 Flint, G.N., Packirisamy, S. (1997). Purity of food cooked in stainless steel utensils, Food Additives and  
1667 Contaminants, 14 (2), p. 115-126.
- 1668 FSA (2019) Total diet study: metals and other elements. Available at  
1669 [https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements?navref=search-global-research-3)  
1670 [elements?navref=search-global-research-3](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements?navref=search-global-research-3). And Measurement of the concentrations of metals and

- 1671 other elements from the 2014 UK total diet study. Available at  
1672 <https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements>
- 1673 FSA (2009). Survey on measurement of the concentrations of metals and other elements from the  
1674 2006 UK total diet study. Food Survey Information Sheet 01/09. Referenced in: Martin Rose, Malcolm  
1675 Baxter, Nicola Brereton, Christina Baskaran. Dietary exposure to metals and other elements in the  
1676 2006 UK Total Diet Study and some trends over the last 30 years. Food Additives and Contaminants,  
1677 2010, 27 (10), pp.1380. Available at <https://hal.archives-ouvertes.fr/hal-00608410/document>.
- 1678 ICH harmonised guideline for elemental impurities ICH Q3D(R1) Final version Adopted on 22 March  
1679 2019. Available at [https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D-](https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D-R1EWG_Document_Step4_Guideline_2019_0322.pdf)  
1680 [R1EWG\\_Document\\_Step4\\_Guideline\\_2019\\_0322.pdf](https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D-R1EWG_Document_Step4_Guideline_2019_0322.pdf)
- 1681 Kuligowski, J., Halperin, K.M., (1992). Stainless steel cookware as a significant source of nickel,  
1682 chromium, and iron. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology, 23 (2), p. 211-215.
- 1683 National Food Agency of Denmark (1995): Food monitoring 1988-1992.
- 1684 Nickel Institute (2011) Where & Why Nickel is Used.
- 1685 Nielsen, G.D., S. derberg, U., J. rgensen, P.J., Tempelton, D.M., Rasmussen, S.N., Andersen, K.E.,  
1686 Grandjean, P. (1999). Absorption and retention of nickel from drinking water in relation to food intake  
1687 and nickel sensitivity. Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology. Vol. 154(1) p. 67-75.
- 1688 Norseth, T. (1986). Nickel. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. Handbook on the toxicology of  
1689 metals. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.
- 1690 Sirot V., Traore T., Guérin T., Noël L., Bachelot M., Cravedi J.-P., Mazur A., Glorennec P., Vasseur P.,  
1691 Jean J., Carne G., Gorecki S., Rivièrè G., and Hulin M. (2018). French infant total diet study: Exposure  
1692 to selected trace elements and associated health risks. Food and Chemical Toxicology 120, 625-633.  
1693 DOI: 10.1016/j.fct.2018.07.062
- 1694 Sunderman, F.W. Jr, Hopfer, S.M., Sweeney, K.R., Marcus, A.H., Most, B.M., Creason, J. (1989). Nickel  
1695 absorption and kinetics in human volunteers. Pro. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med. Vol. 191 p. 5-11.
- 1696 Tietz T., Zellmer S., Ebner I., and Luch A. (2018): Derivation of a TDI for the oral uptake of nickel by  
1697 means of Benchmark Dose Modelling of data from a two generation study on reproduction toxicity.  
1698 Congress of the European Society of Toxicology In Vitro (ESTIV), Berlin, Germany. Available at  
1699 [https://www.researchgate.net/publication/340232498\\_Derivation\\_of\\_a\\_TDI\\_for\\_the\\_oral\\_uptake](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/340232498_Derivation_of_a_TDI_for_the_oral_uptake_of_nickel)  
1700 [of nickel](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/340232498_Derivation_of_a_TDI_for_the_oral_uptake_of_nickel), accessed 20 September 2021.
- 1701 Veien, N.K. (1989). Nickel dermatitis: Its relationship to food and experimental oral challenge. In:  
1702 Maibach, H.I., Menn, T. Nickel and the skin: Immunology and toxicology, p. 165-178. CRC Press, Inc.  
1703 Boca Raton, Florida.
- 1704 Veien, N.K., Menné, T. (1990). Nickel contact allergy and a nickel-restricted diet. Seminars in  
1705 Dermatology, vol. 9, no. 3 9. 197-205.
- 1706 WHO (2017): Guidelines for Drinking-water quality. Fourth edition incorporating first addendum.  
1707 World Health Organization. ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at

1708 [http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/handle/10665/254637/9789241549950-](http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/handle/10665/254637/9789241549950-eng.pdf;jsessionid=C1BF8C8CA525FF9BBE1A9A357ECB02A2?sequence=1)  
1709 [eng.pdf;jsessionid=C1BF8C8CA525FF9BBE1A9A357ECB02A2?sequence=1](http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/handle/10665/254637/9789241549950-eng.pdf;jsessionid=C1BF8C8CA525FF9BBE1A9A357ECB02A2?sequence=1)

## 1710 **Silver (Ag)**

1711 Pure silver has the highest thermal and electrical conductivity of all metals. Silver alloyed containing a  
1712 minimum of 92.5% by weight of silver and 7.5% by weight of other metals, usually copper is known as  
1713 sterling silver (Beliles, 1994).

### 1714 **Sources and levels of intake**

1715 Silver may be ingested via consumption of marine organisms containing low concentrations, and in  
1716 small amounts released from dental fillings (Fowler and Nordberg, 1986). Silver salts are used in some  
1717 countries to disinfect drinking water because of their germicidal properties (Beliles, 1994; Fowler and  
1718 Nordberg, 1986). Silver is also used as a colouring agent for decorations in confectionery and in  
1719 alcoholic beverages.

1720 Based on actual levels of silver in drinking water that were generally below 0.005 mg/L (WHO, 1993),  
1721 the WHO estimated an intake of about 0.007 mg/day (0.12 µg/kg body weight/day).

1722 ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake between 1.29 and 2.65 µg/kg body weight/day (according  
1723 to lower bound or upper bound assumptions) for adults and between 1.60 and 3.47 µg/kg body  
1724 weight/day for children.

1725 In a recent study on infants and toddlers (Sirot et al., 2018; ANSES, 2016), the daily intake was  
1726 estimated to be negligible (0 µg/kg body weight/day) in a lower bound calculation both for mean and  
1727 90th percentile. For upper bound, a daily intake of 2.10 – 4.23 µg/kg body weight/day (mean) and  
1728 2.97-5.35 µg/kg body weight/day (90th percentile) were calculated.

1729 It has to be noted that though the cited studies are total diet studies, in course of which the samples  
1730 were prepared 'as consumed', usage of silver tableware and cutlery were not covered by the study  
1731 design. Hence, the actual daily intake for consumers using these articles on a daily basis could be  
1732 higher.

### 1733 **Metallic food contact materials**

1734 Silver is used in the production of cutlery and tableware (Fowler and Nordberg, 1986).

1735 Attention should be paid to the European standards EN ISO 8442-2 (AFNOR, 1997) and EN ISO 8442-3  
1736 (AFNOR, 1997) that apply to silver-plated nickel silver, or silver-plated stainless steel cutlery and to  
1737 silver-coated brass, copper, nickel-silver, pewter and stainless steel hollow-ware and attachments  
1738 thereto, respectively.

### 1739 **Other food contact materials**

1740 No information is available.

1741 **Release**

1742 The information on release of silver is limited. Pure silver is a moderately soft metal (Beliles, 1994).  
 1743 Chemically, silver is the most reactive of the noble metals, but it does not readily oxidise; instead it  
 1744 “tarnishes” by combining with sulphur or H<sub>2</sub>S. Nitric or sulphuric acids can oxidise silver to the uni-  
 1745 positive ion, the form in which it exists in most of its compounds (Beliles, 1994).

1746 **Safety aspects**

1747 – JECFA (1978) has reviewed the existing toxicological data (WHO, 1977) and concluded that “no  
 1748 evaluation could be made” due to insufficient data. .

1749 – Up to 10-20% of silver salts may be absorbed following ingestion (Fowler and Nordberg, 1986). The  
 1750 biological half-life of silver ranges from a few days for animals up to about 50 days in the human liver  
 1751 (Fowler and Nordberg, 1986). Water-soluble silver compounds, such as silver nitrate, have a local  
 1752 corrosive effect and may cause fatal poisoning if ingested accidentally. Repeated exposure to silver  
 1753 may produce anaemia, cardiac enlargement, growth retardation and degenerative changes in the liver  
 1754 (Fowler and Nordberg, 1986).

1755 – According to EFSA (2016), “ionic silver is non-mutagenic in bacteria but genotoxic and clastogenic in  
 1756 mammalian cells in vitro [...]. No information is available on the genotoxic potential of ionic silver in  
 1757 vivo.”

1758 – Acute human toxicity from silver seems to be related to stimulation followed by depression of  
 1759 structures in the brain stem (WHO, 1977). Symptoms are rise in blood pressure, haemorrhagic  
 1760 gastroenteritis and shock. 10 g of silver nitrate taken orally are considered to be a lethal dose to man,  
 1761 (WHO, 1977). Some silver compounds such as silver oxide and silver nitrate are irritating, and exposure  
 1762 is associated with nose-bleeds and abdominal cramps (Beliles, 1994). High intake of silver, whether as  
 1763 metal or in ionic form can lead to renal and pulmonary lesions and argyria or argyrosis.

1764 – EFSA (2016) summarised the acute toxicity in animals as follows: According to WHO (1977), the LD<sub>50</sub>  
 1765 (mice) is 50 mg/kg body weight as silver nitrate (corresponding to 32 mg ionic silver/kg body weight).  
 1766 According to Tamimi et al. (1998), the LD<sub>50</sub> in rats and rabbits is 428 and 1261 mg silver nitrate/kg  
 1767 body weight, respectively, corresponding to 280 and 794 mg ionic silver/kg body weight, respectively)

1768 – There are only few studies on subchronic or chronic exposure towards silver. In these, effects on the  
 1769 liver, body weight, immune system as well as developmental toxicity were observed – though data  
 1770 were not always consistent (especially for immune toxicity). The lowest NOAEL (0.26 mg ionic silver/kg  
 1771 body weight/day) was identified for reproduction toxicity observed in a one generation study, where  
 1772 silver acetate was orally ingested via drinking water (Sprando et al., 2017). The NOAEL is based on  
 1773 reduced body weight gain of the pups and reduced number of implants and post implantation loss.  
 1774 However, it should be noted, that the selection of the NOAEL is questionable, because the reduced  
 1775 body weight was only observed in one dose group (middle dose: 2.6 mg/kg body weight/day), not  
 1776 dose dependent, and could be explained by a slightly increased number of pups. Reduced number of  
 1777 implants and post implantation loss were only observed in the high dose group (26 mg/kg body  
 1778 weight/day). Hence it would be possible to identify this dose as LOAEL, resulting in a NOAEL of 2.6 mg

1779 ionic silver/kg body weight/day. However, in accordance with EFSA (2016) it should be concluded, that  
1780 the data are not robust enough for derivation of a health based guidance value.

1781 – In 1980, the EPA analysed and described a series of experiments, concluding that silver ion  
1782 concentrations > 0.2 mg/L in drinking water had no harmful effect on laboratory animals that had  
1783 been continuously ingesting them for 11 months (EPA, 1980).

1784 – EPA has established a chronic oral reference dose (RfD) for silver ingestion of 5 µg/kg of body weight  
1785 per day on a review of 70 cases of argyria by oral route, last updated in 1991 (EPA 1991). This value is  
1786 not adapted for risk assessment in food because of the lack of studies.

1787 – The WHO did not set any value for silver in the 4<sup>th</sup> edition of the “Guidelines for drinking-water  
1788 quality”, which is coherent with previous editions (WHO, 1993, 2008, 2011 & 2017). Using argyria  
1789 (silver overload) (Gaul and Staud, 1935) as an endpoint, they derived a total lifetime oral intake where  
1790 no effects are expected of about 10 g of silver (equal to 0.39 mg/person/day).

1791 – The EFSA has established a group restriction for substances containing silver at 0.05 mg/kg food. In  
1792 their decision the EFSA considered the WHO “Guidelines for drinking-water quality” limit of 0.39  
1793 mg/person/day and concluded that a restriction of 0.05 mg Ag/kg food would contribute about 12.5%  
1794 of the human NOAEL (EFSA, 2005).

1795 – Remark: food contact materials containing nanoscale silver have not been considered and need to  
1796 be evaluated separately on a case-by-case basis.

## 1797 **Conclusions and recommendations**

1798 “the SRL for silver is set at 0.08 mg/kg”

1799 Given the lack of data and the lack of clarity associated with the WHO derived total lifetime oral intake  
1800 of about 10 g, the intake data from ANSES (2011) were used to derive the SRL. Using the lower value  
1801 of 1.29 µg/kg body weight/day (0.08 mg/day) and assuming that a person of 60 kg body weight  
1802 consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared with food contact materials  
1803 made from metals and alloys, the SRL is set at 0.08 mg/kg. Because the limit was derived from intake  
1804 data, no allowance for metallic food contact materials was applied.

1805 Silver or silverplated cutlery, manufactured to be used for eating or serving (not for cooking) and not  
1806 on a daily basis, should be labelled accordingly. When assessing their compliance, a reduction factor  
1807 of 5 may be applied to the specific release value, when justified (see Annex II of chapter 3).

## 1808 **References**

1809 AFNOR (1997) EN ISO 8442-3. European Standard. Materials and articles in contact with foodstuffs –  
1810 cutlery and table hollow-ware – Part 3. Requirements for silver-plated table and decorative hollow-  
1811 ware (ISO/DIS 8442-3:1997). Final draft, May 1997.

1812 AFNOR (1997) EN ISO 8442-2. European Standard. Materials and articles in contact with foodstuffs –  
1813 cutlery and table hollow-ware – Part 2. Requirements for stainless steel and silver-plated cutlery  
1814 (ISO/DIS 8442-2:1997). Final draft, May 1997.

- 1815 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
1816 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens. French agency for food, environmental  
1817 and occupational health and safety. Available at  
1818 <https://www.anses.fr/en/system/files/PASER2006sa0361Ra1EN.pdf>, accessed 20 September 2021
- 1819 ANSES (2016): Infant Total Diet Study (iTDS) - Tome 2 - Partie 2, Composés inorganiques. French  
1820 Agency for Food, Environmental and Occupational Health & Safety. Available at  
1821 <https://www.anses.fr/en/content/infant-total-diet-study-itds>, accessed 20 September 2021
- 1822 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology. Fourth Edition. Volume  
1823 2, part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
- 1824 EFSA (2005). Opinion of the Scientific Panel on food additives, flavourings, processing aids and  
1825 materials in contact with food (AFC) on a request from the Commission related to a 7th list of  
1826 substances for food contact materials. EFSA Journal 2005; 201, 1-28. DOI: 10.2903/j.efsa.2005.201a
- 1827 EFSA (2004). Aids and Materials in Contact with Food (AFC) on a 4th list of substances for food contact  
1828 materials adopted on 26 May 2004, EFSA Journal (2004) 65, 1-17. Available at  
1829 <https://efsa.onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.2903/j.efsa.2004.65a>
- 1830 EFSA (2016). Scientific opinion on the re-evaluation of silver (E 174) as food additive. EFSA Panel on  
1831 Food Additives and Nutrient Sources added to Food (ANS). EFSA Journal, 14 (1), 4364. DOI:  
1832 10.2903/j.efsa.2016.4364
- 1833 EPA (1980). Ambient water quality criteria: silver. NTIS Document No. PB 81-117882, US  
1834 Environmental Protection Agency Environmental Criteria and Assessment Office, October 1980.
- 1835 EPA (1991). Integrated Risk Information System, Silver (CASRN 7440-22-4), doc n°0099. Available at  
1836 [https://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/iris/iris\\_documents/documents/subst/0099\\_summary.pdf](https://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/iris/iris_documents/documents/subst/0099_summary.pdf)
- 1837 Fowler, B.A., Nordberg, G.F. (1986). Silver. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. Handbook on the  
1838 toxicology of metals. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.
- 1839 Gaul, L.E., Staud, A.H. (1935). Clinical spectroscopy. Seventy cases of generalized argyrosis following  
1840 organic and colloidal silver medication. J. Am. Med. Assoc. 104: 1387- 1390.
- 1841 JECFA (1978). Evaluation of certain food additives. Twenty-first Report of the Joint FAO/WHO Expert  
1842 Committee on Food Additives. In: Technical Report Series. World Health Organization, Geneva. ISBN:  
1843 92 4 120617 9.
- 1844 Sirot V., Traore T., Guérin T., Noël L., Bachelot M., Cravedi J.-P., Mazur A., Glorennec P., Vasseur P.,  
1845 Jean J., Carne G., Gorecki S., Rivière G., and Hulin M. (2018): French infant total diet study: Exposure  
1846 to selected trace elements and associated health risks. Food and Chemical Toxicology 120, 625-633.  
1847 DOI: 10.1016/j.fct.2018.07.062
- 1848 Sprando R.L., Black T., Keltner Z., Olejnik N., Ferguson M. (2017): Silver acetate exposure: Effects on  
1849 reproduction and post natal development. Food and Chemical Toxicology, 106, 547-557. DOI:  
1850 10.1016/j.fct.2016.06.022

1851 Tamimi SO, Zmeili SM, Gharaibeh MN, Shubair MS and Salhab AS, 1998. Toxicity of a new antismoking  
1852 mouthwash 881010 in rats and rabbits. *Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health Part A*, 53,  
1853 47–60.

1854 WHO (1977). 447. Silver. In: WHO Food Additives Series. International Programme on chemical  
1855 safety. World Health Organization, Geneva. Available at  
1856 <http://www.inchem.org/documents/jecfa/jecmono/v12je19.htm>, accessed 20 September 2021

1857 WHO (1993). Guidelines for drinking-water quality. Volume 1, Recommendations.

1858 WHO (2008). Guidelines for drinking-water quality. Third edition, incorporating first and second  
1859 addenda. Volume 1, Recommendations.

1860 WHO (2011). Guidelines for Drinking-water quality. Fourth edition. ISBN: 978 92 4 154815 1. Available  
1861 at [http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2011/9789241548151\\_eng.pdf?ua=1](http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2011/9789241548151_eng.pdf?ua=1)

1862 WHO (2017). Guidelines for Drinking-water quality. Fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
1863 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at  
1864 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

## 1865 **Tin (Sn)**

1866 Tin occurs in the Earth's crust with an average abundance of 2 mg/kg and is concentrated in areas of  
1867 tin-bearing minerals, mainly as cassiterite or tinstone (SnO<sub>2</sub>), which is the main source of tin  
1868 production (Beliles, 1994). Combustion of fossil fuels releases small quantities of tin into the air (WHO,  
1869 2005). Secondary tin sources are general tin-, lead- and copper-based alloys and, in particular, solder  
1870 from electrical and electronic devices. Tin is recovered from tinplate manufacture and from cans  
1871 (Magos, 1986).

## 1872 **Sources and levels of intake**

1873 Inorganic tin is found in most foodstuffs; it may occur in a cationic form (stannous and stannic  
1874 compounds) or as inorganic anions (stannites or stannates). Levels are generally less than 1 mg/kg in  
1875 unprocessed foodstuffs. Higher concentrations are found in canned foodstuffs due to dissolution of  
1876 the tinplate to form inorganic tin compounds or complexes (WHO, 2005).

1877 A normal diet without canned foodstuffs or beverages contains approximately 0.2 mg tin/day (WHO,  
1878 2005). The total average dietary intake of tin is 4 mg/day (Beliles, 1994). More recently, in the 2014  
1879 British total diet study the highest total mean and 97.5th percentile exposures were in the 1.5 to 3  
1880 years age class and were 95 - 96 µg/kg b.w. /day and 300 µg/kg b.w. /day, respectively. The highest  
1881 contributing food group to total mean exposure was the 'canned vegetables' group with a mean  
1882 exposure of 61 µg/kg b.w. /day (FSA, 2014).

1883 ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake as total tin at 3.9 µg/person/day in adults and 7.3  
1884 µg/person/day in children. Highest concentrations were measured in stewed fruits (8.55 mg/kg) and  
1885 cheese (1.94 mg/kg).

## 1886 **Metallic food contact materials**

1887 At present, the major source of tin in the diet is from food contact materials; especially the release  
 1888 from tin cans to acidic foodstuffs (WHO, 2005). Tin cans are actually steel cans with a thin coating of  
 1889 metallic tin (tinplate) (Beliles, 1994). There is often an internal resin-based coating on the tinplate.  
 1890 Tinplate is mainly used in cans and closures and lids for glass bottles and jars. Tin is also found in  
 1891 pewter. Tin is used in alloys, e.g. with copper for conversion into bronze and with zinc for galvanisation  
 1892 (Beliles, 1994). Tin is also used to coat kitchen utensils.

1893 While the use of tin in cans has decreased somewhat in recent years in the USA, tinplate remains the  
 1894 largest tin use sector in the EU, where quantities employed have been stable for several years. There  
 1895 is significant growth in tinplate use in other regions.

## 1896 **Other food contact materials**

1897 Inorganic tin compounds are used as pigments in the ceramic industry (Magos, 1986).

1898 Tin(IV) oxide is used both as an opacifier and as a constituent of coloured pigments in high-quality  
 1899 tableware, e.g. bone china and porcelain products. Thin tin(IV) oxide films on glass can also be used  
 1900 to strengthen and provide scratch-resistance to beer glasses, milk bottles, etc.

## 1901 **Release**

1902 Tin is amphoteric, reacting with both strong acids and bases, but is relatively non-reactive with nearly  
 1903 neutral solutions (Beliles, 1994). The presence of oxygen greatly accelerates reactivity in solution  
 1904 (Beliles, 1994).

1905 Tinplate used in food containers is only slowly oxidised. The tin content in foodstuffs depends on:

- 1906 – whether the tin cans are lacquered;
- 1907 – the presence of any oxidising agents or corrosion accelerators (e.g. nitrate);
- 1908 – the acidity of the product in the tin can;
- 1909 – how long, and at what temperature, the tin cans are stored before being opened;
- 1910 – the length of time the product is kept in the tin can after it has been opened.

1911 Oxidation of tinplate, followed by the release of tin ions into the foodstuff is known as a “sacrificial  
 1912 anode effect”, a physiochemical mechanism that protects the underlying steel from corrosion. The  
 1913 dissolution of tin protects the can from possible perforation and protects the contents from  
 1914 degradation (changes in colour and flavour) during heat sterilisation and storage.

1915 The concentration of tin in foodstuffs stored in unlacquered cans may exceed 100 mg/kg, whereas  
 1916 foodstuffs stored in lacquered cans show tin levels generally below 25 mg/kg (WHO, 2005). Storing  
 1917 foodstuffs in opened unlacquered cans results in substantial increases in the tin concentration in the  
 1918 foodstuffs (WHO, 2005). Fruits and vegetables consumed from unlacquered cans make up only a small

1919 percentage of dietary intake (by weight of total food intake), but their contribution to dietary tin intake  
 1920 amounts to 85%. The thickness of the lacquer coating greatly influences the performance of the  
 1921 lacquered food can (WHO, 2005).

1922 An oxide film forms on metallic tin on exposure to air, whether in the pure form or as an alloy, and  
 1923 not just on dipped and electroplated tin. The film is fairly stable and provides a barrier to further  
 1924 oxidation. At pH values between 3 and 10 and in the absence of complexing agents, the oxide barrier  
 1925 protects the metal from the food. Outside this pH range, however, corrosion of the tin occurs (Murphy  
 1926 and Amberg-Muller, 1996).

1927 Pewter may contain lead as a contaminant, which can also be released. Antique pewter may have  
 1928 been manufactured using lead-containing alloys, but this is not the case with modern pewter. Today,  
 1929 maximum levels of lead are specified for lead-containing pewter.

### 1930 **Safety aspects**

1931 – JECFA (1989) established in 1988 a PTWI at 14 mg/kg body weight/week including tin from food  
 1932 additives. The JECFA also states that “tin levels should be as low as practicable because of possibility  
 1933 of gastric irritation”. In 2005, the JECFA maintained the PTWI of 14 mg/kg/week (JECFA 2005).

1934 – WHO (2017) has concluded that, because of the low toxicity of inorganic tin, a tentative guideline  
 1935 value could be derived three orders of magnitude higher than the normal tin concentration in drinking-  
 1936 water. For this reason the establishment of a numerical guideline value for inorganic tin was deemed  
 1937 not necessary.

1938 – Codex Standard 193-1995 fixed a maximum limit of 250 mg/kg for tin in canned foods and a  
 1939 maximum level of 150 mg/kg for tin in canned beverages.

1940 – According to Regulation (EC) No 1333/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16  
 1941 December 2008 on food additives, stannous chloride is authorised as a food additive for canned and  
 1942 bottled asparagus (only white asparagus) up to 25 mg/kg (as tin).

1943 – There are no indications of chronic tin toxicity in humans (WHO, 2005). Inorganic tin compounds,  
 1944 especially the environmentally dominant tetravalent tins, are poorly absorbed from the  
 1945 gastrointestinal tract (Magos, 1986). Tin compounds act as an irritant for the gastrointestinal tract  
 1946 mucosa, causing nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, fatigue and headache (WHO, 2005). There is only a  
 1947 limited number of cases indicating possible gastrointestinal irritation which have been reported  
 1948 following the consumption of canned fruit juices, tomatoes, cherries, asparagus, herrings and apricots.  
 1949 The exact concentrations of tin were unknown in these cases of assumed acute poisoning, but were  
 1950 probably in the range of 300-500 mg/kg (WHO, 1980). Earlier studies suggest that tin might interfere  
 1951 with iron absorption and haemoglobin formation. Tin also has an inhibitory effect on copper, zinc and  
 1952 calcium absorption (WHO, 2005). Chronic exposure to high levels of tin may result in growth  
 1953 depression and altered immune function, possibly due to interactions between tin and zinc or  
 1954 selenium (WHO, 2005).

1955 – EFSA (2006) quoted a study recording a decrease in zinc assimilation following absorption of 50  
 1956 mg/day of SnCl<sub>2</sub>. The EFSA assessed tin in 2005, but considered the available data insufficient to derive

1957 a tolerable upper intake level (EFSA, 2005). They noted that current daily intakes in the EU, ranging up  
1958 to 6 mg/day in the UK, appears to be well below levels associated with adverse effects.

1959 – In their assessment, the EVM could not establish a safe upper level, but considered that 0.22 mg/kg  
1960 body weight/day (13.2 mg/day) would not be expected to produce adverse effects in humans (EVM,  
1961 2003). This was based on a NOAEL for liver cell changes and anaemia of 22-33 mg/kg body weight/day  
1962 from a sub-chronic study in rats with uncertainty factors of 10 for inter-species and 10 for intra-species  
1963 variation.

1964 – The COT, in their 2008 statement, considered that the PTWI is not directly applicable to long-term  
1965 dietary exposure as it appears to be based on acute toxicity (COT, 2008). They used the EVMs  
1966 assessment as a guidance level.

1967 – In 2010, the “REACH Tin Metal Consortium” conducted a 28-day, repeated dose, oral toxicity study  
1968 in rats with tin as powder. Multiple endpoints were investigated and no adverse effects have been  
1969 detected even at the highest dose (1,000 mg/kg body weight/day). However, the study was considered  
1970 inadequate because tin was administered in a powder form, which is not representative of human  
1971 dietary exposure.

1972 – According to Regulation (EC) No. 1881/2006 setting maximum levels for certain contaminants in  
1973 foodstuffs, the maximum levels of tin (inorganic) have been set to:

1974 – 50 mg/kg for certain canned foods for babies and young children

1975 – 50 mg/kg canned dietary foods for special medical purposes for infants

1976 – 100 mg/kg for canned beverages, including fruit juices and vegetable juices

1977 – 200 mg/kg for canned foods other than beverages

## 1978 **Conclusions and recommendations**

1979 “the SRL for tin is set at 100 mg/kg”

1980 Food contact with tin materials exposed to air should be avoided at low pH and high temperatures as  
1981 the “sacrificial effect” afforded by sealed tin-plated cans is lost and the underlying steel is no longer  
1982 protected.

1983 Consumers should be advised against storing food in opened tin-plated cans.

1984 In view of the observed acute effects (gastric irritation) the SRL for tin is set, in approximation with  
1985 Regulation (EC) No. 1881/2006, at 100 mg/kg. This limit does not apply to food contact applications  
1986 that are covered by Regulation (EC) No. 1881/2006.

1987 The lower limit for babies and young children was not considered because exposure of children to tin  
1988 from food contact applications that are not covered by Regulation (EC) No. 1881/2006 is negligible  
1989 (Foster, 2010).

## 1990                   **References**

- 1991 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
1992 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.
- 1993 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, Fourth edition, Volume  
1994 2, Part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
- 1995 Codex Standard 193-1995. Codex General Standard for Contaminants and Toxins in Food and Feed;  
1996 Adopted 1995; Revised 1997, 2006, 2008, 2009; Amended 2009, 2010, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016,  
1997 2017, 2018, 2019.
- 1998 EFSA (2005). Opinion of the Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies (NDA) related  
1999 to the tolerable upper intake level of tin. EFSA, Parma.
- 2000 EFSA (2006). Tolerable upper intake levels for vitamins and minerals. Scientific Committee on Food,  
2001 Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies. February 2006, Parma. Available at  
2002 <https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-/publication/3748ff41-1c4a-4232-8546-fb176a685e13>
- 2003 EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
2004 Available at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/cot/vitmin2003.pdf>
- 2005 Foster, E., Mathers, J.C., Adamson, A.J. (2010). Packaged food intake by British children aged 0 to 6  
2006 years. Food Additives and Contaminants – Part A Chemistry, Analysis, Control, Exposure and Risk  
2007 Assessment, 27 (3), 380-388.
- 2008 FSA (2014). Measurement of the concentrations of metals and other elements from the 2014 UK total  
2009 diet study. Available at [https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)  
2010 [metals-and-other-elements](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)
- 2011 JECFA (1989). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Thirty-third report of the Joint  
2012 FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organization, Technical Report Series  
2013 776. Available at <https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/39252>.
- 2014 JECFA (2005). Evaluation of certain food contaminants: sixty-fourth report of the Joint FAO/WHO  
2015 Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organization, Technical Report Series 930.  
2016 Available at <https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/43258>.
- 2017 Magos, L. (1986). Tin. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. Handbook on the toxicology of metals.  
2018 Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.
- 2019 Murphy, T.P., Amberg-Muller, J.P. (1996). Migration from Food Contact Materials. Katan, L.L. (ed).  
2020 Blackie Academic and Professional, Glasgow, United Kingdom, pp. 111-144.
- 2021 Regulation (EC) No 1881/2006 of 19 December 2006 setting maximum levels for certain contaminants  
2022 in foodstuffs. OJ L 364, 20.12.2006, p. 5.
- 2023 Regulation (EC) No 1333/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 December 2008  
2024 on food additives. OJ L 354, 31.12.2008, p. 16.

- 2025 WHO (1980). Tin and organotin compounds: a preliminary review.
- 2026 WHO (2005). Concise International Chemical Assessment Document 65; Tin and Inorganic Tin  
2027 Compounds. World Health Organisation 2005.
- 2028 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality: fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
2029 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at  
2030 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

## 2031 **Titanium (Ti)**

- 2032 Titanium is the ninth most common element in the Earth's crust and occurs in a number of minerals  
2033 (Beliles, 1994). Titanium is a silvery-grey metal resembling polished steel (Beliles, 1994). There is no  
2034 evidence indicating that titanium is an essential element for man (Nordman and Berlin, 1986).

### 2035 **Sources and levels of intake**

- 2036 In the UK, the use of titanium dioxide is permitted, with no indications that it will align with the EU on  
2037 this issue. The Food Standard Agency has decided to launch their own review of the safety of titanium  
2038 dioxide as a food additive (COT, 2022).

- 2039 In EU, the titanium dioxide was used as food additive (E 171) and is still used in toothpastes,  
2040 sunscreens and pharmaceuticals.

- 2041 As of 2022, the use of E 171 titanium dioxide as a food additive is banned in Europe. Titanium dioxide  
2042 is not authorised in the food categories listed in Annex II (Part D and E) of Regulation (EC) No  
2043 1333/2008 as amended by Regulation (EC) No 2022/63. Until 7 August 2022, foods produced in  
2044 accordance with the rules applicable before 7 February 2022 may continue to be placed on the market.  
2045 After that date, they may remain on the market until their date of minimum durability or 'use by' date  
2046 (Regulation (EC) No 2022/63).

- 2047 The European Commission "shall, following consultation on the European Medicines Agency, review  
2048 the necessity to maintain titanium dioxide (E 171) or to delete it from the Union list of food additives  
2049 for the exclusive use as colour in medicinal products in Part B of Annex II to Regulation (EC) No  
2050 1333/2008 within three years after the date of entering into force" of Regulation (EC) No 2022/63.

### 2051 **Metallic food contact materials**

- 2052 Titanium is often used in the form of alloys, which are stronger and more resistant to corrosion than  
2053 the metal itself (Nordman and Berlin, 1986). However, its use in food contact materials is unknown.  
2054 Titanium has been suggested for use with corrosive or delicate liquids such as dairy products, fruit  
2055 juices and in the wine industry (Feliciani et al., 1998). Titanium is also used in certain so-called  
2056 "stabilised" forms of stainless steels, which in general contain less than 1% titanium.

## 2057 **Other food contact materials**

2058 The extreme whiteness and brightness of titanium dioxide has led to its extensive use as a white  
2059 pigment in paints, lacquers, enamels, paper-coatings and plastics (Beliles, 1994; Nordman and Berlin,  
2060 1986). Titanium compounds are also used as catalysts in the manufacture of plastics.

## 2061 **Release**

2062 Titanium seems to be practically inert, due to the phenomenon of passivation of the titanium surface  
2063 by the formation of a molecular layer of TiO<sub>2</sub>. This layer, which is very adherent to the metallic  
2064 substrate, is hardly removed even by aggressive 3% v/v acetic acid solution saturated with 18-20%  
2065 sodium chloride (Feliciani et al., 1998).

## 2066 **Safety aspects**

2067 – Titanium dioxide was assessed by the JECFA in 1969 and an unlimited ADI was determined (JECFA,  
2068 1970).

2069 – The estimated intake of titanium is 0.3-1 mg/day (Beliles, 1994; Whitehead, 1991).

2070 – Titanium compounds are generally considered to be poorly absorbed upon ingestion (Nordman and  
2071 Berlin, 1986). Studies on titanium alloys used in implants and titanium compounds used in cosmetics  
2072 and pharmaceuticals do not indicate any localised tissue effects (Nordman and Berlin, 1986). A distinct  
2073 toxicological dichotomy exists between TiO<sub>2</sub>, the insoluble, unreactive non-metabolised form that is  
2074 devoid of toxicity, and the soluble, inorganic salts that metabolise normally with absorption,  
2075 distribution, and excretion (Beliles, 1994). However, little information exists on how titanium acts as  
2076 a toxic agent, and what does exist is of little or no value in understanding the toxic actions of titanium  
2077 (Beliles, 1994).

2078 – EFSA (2021) provided an updated safety assessment of the food additive titanium dioxide (E 171)  
2079 taking into account all new relevant data available to EFSA. Along with all the uncertainties, in  
2080 particular the fact that genotoxicity concern could not be ruled out, the Panel concluded that E 171  
2081 can no longer be considered as safe when used as a food additive.

2082 The 2021 opinion by EFSA applies only to E 171 as described in Commission Regulation (EU) No  
2083 231/2012 as well as to E 171 specified in the 2019 opinion; while the titanium in metals and alloys as  
2084 food contact materials seems to be practically inert, due to the phenomenon of passivation.

## 2085 **Conclusions and recommendations**

2086 “it is appropriate not to set any SRL for titanium”

2087 At the moment, it is appropriate not to set any SRL for titanium. However, the definition of appropriate  
2088 measures related to titanium dioxide used in food contact materials and articles is under study.

2089 **References**

2090 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, Fourth edition, Volume  
2091 2, Part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

2092 COT (2022). COT Interim position paper on titanium dioxide. Available at  
2093 [https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/2022-](https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/2022-01/TiO2%20COT%20Interim%20position%20paper.pdf)  
2094 [01/TiO2%20COT%20Interim%20position%20paper.pdf](https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/2022-01/TiO2%20COT%20Interim%20position%20paper.pdf)

2095 EFSA (2019). Scientific opinion on the proposed amendment of the EU specification for titanium  
2096 dioxide (E 171) with respect to the inclusion of additional parameters related to its particle size  
2097 distribution. EFSA Journal 2019;17(7):5760, 23. DOI: 10.2903/j.efsa.2019.5760

2098 EFSA (2021). Scientific Opinion on the safety assessment of titanium dioxide (E171) as a food additive.  
2099 EFSA Journal 2021;19(5):6585, 130 pp. DOI: 10.2903/j.efsa.2021.6585

2100 Feliciani, R., Migliorelli, D., Maggio, A., Gramiccioni, L. (1998). Titanium: a promising new material for  
2101 food contact. A study of titanium resistance to some aggressive food simulants. Food Additives and  
2102 Contaminants. Vol. 15 (2), p. 237-242.

2103 JECFA (1970). Thirteenth Report of the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives (Rome,  
2104 27 May-4 June 1969). World Health Organization, Geneva.

2105 Nordman, H., Berlin, M. (1986). Titanium. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. Handbook on the  
2106 toxicology of metals. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.

2107 Regulation (EC) No 1333/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 December 2008  
2108 on food additives. OJ L 354, 31.12.2008, p. 16.

2109 Regulation (EU) No 231/2012 of 9 March 2012 laying down specifications for food additives listed in  
2110 Annexes II and III to Regulation (EC) No 1333/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council. OJ  
2111 L 83, 22.3.2012, p. 1.

2112 Regulation (EU) 2022/63 of 14 January 2022 amending Annexes II and III to Regulation (EC)  
2113 No 1333/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council as regards the food additive titanium  
2114 dioxide (E 171). OJ L 11, 18.1.2022, p. 1.

2115 Whitehead, J. (1991). Titanium. In.: Metals and their compounds in the environment. Occurrence,  
2116 analysis and biological relevance. Ed.: Merian, E. VCH.

2117 **Vanadium (V)**

2118 Vanadium is a white, shiny, soft, ductile metal. It is highly resistant to corrosion by alkali compounds  
2119 as well as hydrochloric and sulphuric acids. It is to be found in some ores and it is mainly used in alloys.

## 2120 Sources and levels of intake

2121 Vanadium is mainly found in seafood and mushrooms, but also in many fruits and vegetables, albeit  
2122 in very low quantities.

2123 In the USA, dietary intake was estimated in the range of 6-18 µg/day for adults (Pennington and Jones,  
2124 1987). Results from a duplicate diet study in Spain estimated the dietary intake of vanadium equal to  
2125 156 µg/day (Domingo et al., 2011).

2126 ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 52 µg/day (0.86 µg/kg body weight/day) in adults and  
2127 1.06 µg/kg body weight/day in children.

## 2128 Metallic food contact materials

2129 Vanadium can be used in alloys to manufacture tools such as knife blades. Vanadium steel is extremely  
2130 well suited to the manufacture of tools, axes and knives, as well as spare parts for rotating machines.  
2131 Adding vanadium to steel in proportions of approx. 1% produces a highly shock-resistant alloy.

2132 In France, MCDA n°1 (V02 – 01/04/2017) on food contact suitability of metals and alloys specifies  
2133 limits for vanadium.

## 2134 Other food contact materials

2135 Vanadium oxide is used in ceramic pigments.

## 2136 Release

2137 No information available.

## 2138 Safety aspects

2139 – The EVM (2003) has assessed vanadium but could not derive an upper limit.

2140 – The American Food and Nutrition Board (FNB, 2001) derived an upper limit (UL) of 1.8 mg/day for  
2141 vanadium. This value was derived from a LOAEL of 7.7 mg/kg body weight/day (460 mg/day) from a  
2142 rat study, an average body weight of 68.5 kg and an uncertainty factor of 300. This upper limit was  
2143 also adopted by Health Canada. However, Health Canada has stated: “Although vanadium in food has  
2144 not been shown to cause adverse effects in humans, there is no justification for adding vanadium to  
2145 food and vanadium supplements should be used with caution. The UL is based on adverse effects in  
2146 laboratory animals and this data could be used to set a UL for adults but not children and adolescents”  
2147 (Health Canada, 2017).

2148 – EFSA (2006; 2009) reviewed the findings of FNB (2001). The absence of a NOAEL and limited dose-  
2149 response data prevented the EFSA from deriving an upper limit. Furthermore, the EFSA noted that  
2150 vanadium has been observed as having adverse effects on kidneys, spleen, lungs and blood pressure  
2151 in animals. In addition, developmental toxicity has also been seen in the offspring of rats. However, it  
2152 was noted that an exposure of 0.01 to 0.02 mg/day is at least three orders of magnitude below the

2153 dose which causes gastrointestinal effects in body-builders taking vanadium as supplements (EFSA,  
2154 2006; 2009).

2155 – According to ICH Q3D, the oral Vanadium PDE is 120 µg/day.

## 2156 **Conclusions and recommendations**

2157 “the SRL for vanadium is set at 0.01 mg/kg”

2158 It was decided to follow the opinion issued by the EFSA. Given the toxicity data and potential for  
2159 adverse health effects, an SRL determined using the FNB/Health Canada upper limit cannot be  
2160 supported. Therefore, it was agreed to base the SRL on the EFSA exposure data. Using the lower  
2161 estimated intake of 0.01 mg/day and assuming that a person of 60 kg body weight consumes 1 kg of  
2162 foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared with food contact materials made from metals  
2163 and alloys, the SRL for vanadium is set at 0.01 mg/kg. Since the SRL has been derived from exposure  
2164 data, the use of an allocation factor is not deemed necessary.

## 2165 **References**

2166 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
2167 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

2168 Domingo, J.L., Perelló, G., Giné Bordonaba, J. (2011). Dietary Intake of Metals by the Population of  
2169 Tarragona County (Catalonia, Spain): Results from a Duplicate Diet Study. Biological Trace Element  
2170 Research, pp. 1-6.

2171 EFSA (2006). Tolerable upper intake levels for vitamins and minerals. Scientific Committee on Food,  
2172 Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies. February 2006, Parma. Available at  
2173 <https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-/publication/3748ff41-1c4a-4232-8546-fb176a685e13>

2174 EFSA (2009). Scientific Opinion of the Panel on Food Additives, Flavourings, Processing Aids and  
2175 Materials in Contact with Food on a Request from the Commission on Vanadium Compounds as  
2176 Sources for Vanadium. EFSA Journal (2008) 634, 1-15. DOI: 10.2903/j.efsa.2008.634.

2177 EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
2178 Available at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/cot/vitmin2003.pdf>

2179 FNB (2001). American Food and Nutrition Board, Institute of Medicine. Dietary Reference Intakes for  
2180 Vitamin A, Vitamin K, Arsenic, Boron, Chromium, Copper, Iodine, Iron, Manganese, Molybdenum,  
2181 Nickel, Silicon, Vanadium, and Zinc. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press. Available at  
2182 <https://doi.org/10.17226/10026>

2183 Health Canada (2017). Reference Guide to Understanding and Using the Data 2015 Canadian  
2184 Community Health Survey—Nutrition. ISBN: 978-0-660-08450-3. Available at  
2185 [https://www.canada.ca/en/health-canada/services/food-nutrition/food-nutrition-](https://www.canada.ca/en/health-canada/services/food-nutrition/food-nutrition-surveillance/health-nutrition-surveys/canadian-community-health-survey-cchs/reference-guide-understanding-using-data-2015.html)  
2186 [surveillance/health-nutrition-surveys/canadian-community-health-survey-cchs/reference-guide-](https://www.canada.ca/en/health-canada/services/food-nutrition/food-nutrition-surveillance/health-nutrition-surveys/canadian-community-health-survey-cchs/reference-guide-understanding-using-data-2015.html)  
2187 [understanding-using-data-2015.html](https://www.canada.ca/en/health-canada/services/food-nutrition/food-nutrition-surveillance/health-nutrition-surveys/canadian-community-health-survey-cchs/reference-guide-understanding-using-data-2015.html)

2188 ICH harmonised guideline for elemental impurities ICH Q3D(R1) Final version Adopted on 22 March  
 2189 2019. Available at <https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D->  
 2190 R1EWG\_Document\_Step4\_Guideline\_2019\_0322.pdf .

2191 Pennington, J.A.T., Jones, J.W. (1987). Molybdenum, nickel, cobalt, vanadium, and strontium in total  
 2192 diets. Journal of the American Dietetic Association, 87 (12), p. 1644-1650.

2193 Information MCDA n°1 (V02 – 01/04/2017). Food contact suitability of metals and alloys. Available  
 2194 (in English, only the French version is the official version) at  
 2195 [https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions\\_services/dgccrf/securite/produits\\_alimentaires](https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions_services/dgccrf/securite/produits_alimentaires/materiaux_contact/doc_pdf/fiche_metaux-alliages_version_anglaise.pdf)  
 2196 [/materiaux\\_contact/doc\\_pdf/fiche\\_metaux-alliages\\_version\\_anglaise.pdf](https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions_services/dgccrf/securite/produits_alimentaires/materiaux_contact/doc_pdf/fiche_metaux-alliages_version_anglaise.pdf)  
 2197 Available (in French) at  
 2198 [https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions\\_services/dgccrf/securite/produits\\_alimentaires](https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions_services/dgccrf/securite/produits_alimentaires/materiaux_contact/fiches-metaux-alliages-v2.pdf)  
 2199 [/materiaux\\_contact/fiches-metaux-alliages-v2.pdf](https://www.economie.gouv.fr/files/files/directions_services/dgccrf/securite/produits_alimentaires/materiaux_contact/fiches-metaux-alliages-v2.pdf)

## 2200 Zinc (Zn)

2201 Zinc is an essential trace metal (Elinder, 1986). Zinc is the 25th most abundant element and is widely  
 2202 found in nature (Beliles, 1994). Zinc appears in the form of zinc ions or zinc salts. Galvanising, a process  
 2203 involving the coating of iron and steel with zinc to prevent corrosion, is the most important use of zinc  
 2204 (Beliles, 1994). Zinc protects iron from rusting because it is a stronger reducing agent (Beliles, 1994).  
 2205 Zinc is also used in fertilisers.

### 2206 Sources and levels of intake

2207 Zinc occurs in most foodstuffs and beverages (ATSDR, 2005). The main contributors to zinc intake are  
 2208 meats, especially organs, whole grain cereals and milk products including cheese. Oysters and peanuts  
 2209 may contain up to 100 mg/kg and 30 mg/kg zinc, respectively.

2210 In the 2014 British total diet study, the highest total mean and 97.5th percentile exposures were in  
 2211 the 1.5 to 3 years age class and were 320 µg/kg bw/day and 530 µg/kg bw/day, respectively. The  
 2212 highest contributing food groups to total mean exposure were the 'miscellaneous cereals' and 'dairy  
 2213 products' groups with a mean exposure of 51 µg/kg bw/day. (FSA, 2014). More recently results from  
 2214 a duplicate diet study in Spain estimated the dietary intake of zinc equal to 6.8 mg/day (Domingo et  
 2215 al., 2011). In Ireland the mean and 95th percentile intake from all sources including supplements were  
 2216 equal to 10.4 mg/day and 19.4 mg/day, respectively (IUNA, 2011). ANSES (2011) estimated for adults  
 2217 the mean daily intake at 7.9 mg/day and for the 95th percentile at 13.3 mg/day.

### 2218 Metallic food contact materials

2219 Major uses of zinc are in the production of non-corrosive alloys, brass and in galvanised steel and iron  
 2220 products (Elinder, 1986). A common use of metallic zinc is to coat iron or other metals so that they do  
 2221 not rust or corrode (ATSDR, 2005). Metallic zinc is also mixed with other metals to form alloys such as  
 2222 brass and bronze (ATSDR, 2005). Galvanised products are widely used as household appliances  
 2223 (Elinder, 1986). Zinc may contain small amounts of more toxic metals, e.g. cadmium (0.01-0.04%) and

2224 lead, as impurities (Elinder, 1986). The use of food contact materials made of zinc, zinc alloys or  
2225 galvanised zinc is limited.

2226 Zinc-coated steels are used in silos for storing foodstuffs.

## 2227 **Other food contact materials**

2228 Zinc sulfide is grey-white or yellow-white, and zinc oxide is white. Both of these salts are used to make  
2229 white paints, ceramics, and several other products (ATSDR, 2005).

## 2230 **Release**

2231 Zinc is a relatively soft metal and has a strong tendency to react with inorganic compounds, e.g. to  
2232 form oxides, as well as organic compounds (Elinder, 1986). Galvanised iron containers holding acidic  
2233 drinks such as orange juice or alcoholic beverages have resulted in a number of reports of poisoning.  
2234 Zinc is easily dissolved in dilute acids and by bases (Beliles, 1994). Zinc galvanised utensils may release  
2235 zinc and cadmium. They can also release zinc hydrocarbonate in confined spaces when exposed to air  
2236 and humidity.

2237 Data on the release of zinc from food contact materials and articles are scarce. One study, a survey of  
2238 teapots, showed zinc release between 0.9 mg/L and 40 mg/L using a citric acid solution (1 g/L) as  
2239 simulant and a contact time of 30 min. (Bolle et al., 2011).

## 2240 **Safety aspects**

2241 – JECFA (1982) established a PMTDI of 0.3-1 mg/kg body weight/day.

2242 – The required daily intake for adults is about 15 mg/day. However, the requirement varies with age  
2243 (JECFA, 1982).

2244 – WHO (2017) stated that derivation of a health-based guideline value for drinking water was not  
2245 required. However, drinking water containing levels above 3 mg/L may not be acceptable to  
2246 consumers.

2247 – Zinc is one of the most ubiquitous of the essential trace metals (Florence and Batley, 1980). The  
2248 absorption of ingested zinc is highly variable (10-90%) (Elinder, 1986). Zinc is an essential element  
2249 necessary for the functioning of a large number of metallo-enzymes (ATSDR, 2005; Beliles, 1994). Zinc  
2250 acts to reduce the toxicity of cadmium and copper (Florence and Batley, 1980). Zinc may be a modifier  
2251 of the carcinogenic response; zinc deficiency or excessively high levels of zinc may enhance  
2252 susceptibility to carcinogenesis (Beliles, 1994).

2253 – In their assessment, the EVM (EVM, 2003) derived a safe upper level of 0.42 mg/kg body weight/day  
2254 (25 mg/day) for supplemental zinc. This is based on a LOAEL of 50 mg/person/day for the inhibition of  
2255 erythrocyte superoxide dismutase (eSOD) by zinc, associated with a mild copper deficiency. An  
2256 uncertainty factor of 2 was used for LOAEL to NOAEL extrapolation as the effect is a small inconsistent  
2257 change in a biochemical parameter. Assuming a maximum intake of 17 mg/person/day from food a  
2258 total intake of 0.7 mg/kg body weight/day would not be expected to result in any adverse effect.

2259 –SCF (2003) and EFSA (2006) interpreted, for the same endpoint (inhibition of eSOD), the value of  
2260 50 mg/day as the NOAEL. Using an uncertainty factor of 2 to account for the small number of subjects  
2261 surveyed, the upper limit was set to 25 mg/day. Furthermore, for children aged 1-3 years, an upper  
2262 limit of 7 mg/day was extrapolated from the adult upper limit.

2263 – In the 2008 European Risk Assessment Report, the overall oral NOAEL of 50 mg/day was confirmed,  
2264 using the same studies as SCF (2003). However, no additional uncertainty factor was used. (JRC, 2008)

2265 – ICH Q 3D: Zinc is one of some elemental impurities for which PDEs have not been established due to  
2266 their low inherent toxicity and/or differences in regional regulations are not addressed in this  
2267 guideline. If these elemental impurities are present or included in the drug product, they are  
2268 addressed by other guidelines and/or regional regulations and practices that may be applicable for  
2269 particular elements.

## 2270 **Conclusions and recommendations**

2271 “the SRL for zinc is set at 5 mg/kg”

2272 It was decided to follow the opinion issued by the SCF (2003) and EFSA (2006) with a derived upper  
2273 limit of 25 mg/day.

2274 Furthermore, intake data from multiple European countries to estimate worst-case oral exposure  
2275 from zinc were provided. The calculated worst-case intake from food and supplements at the 95th  
2276 percentile resulted in a daily intake of 20 mg/day. Since this value is below the toxicologically derived  
2277 limit of 25 mg/day the difference of 5 mg/day can be allocated to exposure from food contact  
2278 materials made from metals and alloys.

2279 Consequently, assuming that a person of 60 kg body weight consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that  
2280 is packaged and/or prepared with food contact materials made from metals and alloys, the SRL for  
2281 zinc is set at 5 mg/kg.

## 2282 **References**

2283 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
2284 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

2285 ATSDR (2005). Toxicological profile for zinc. US Department of Health & Human Services. Public Health  
2286 Service. Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry. Available at  
2287 <https://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/toxprofiles/tp60.pdf>

2288 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty’s Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, Fourth edition, Volume  
2289 2, Part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

2290 Bolle, F., Brian, W., Petit, D., Boutakhrit, K., Feraille, G., van Loco, J. (2011). Tea brewed in traditional  
2291 metallic teapots as a significant source of lead, nickel and other chemical elements. Food Additives  
2292 and Contaminants – Part A Chemistry, Analysis, Control, Exposure and Risk Assessment, 28 (9), pp.  
2293 1287-1293.

- 2294 Domingo, J.L., Perelló, G., Giné Bordonaba, J. (2011). Dietary Intake of Metals by the Population of  
2295 Tarragona County (Catalonia, Spain): Results from a Duplicate Diet Study. *Biological Trace Element*  
2296 *Research*, pp. 1-6.
- 2297 EFSA (2006). Tolerable upper intake levels for vitamins and minerals. Scientific Committee on Food,  
2298 Scientific Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies. February 2006, Parma. Available at  
2299 <https://op.europa.eu/en/publication-detail/-/publication/3748ff41-1c4a-4232-8546-fb176a685e13>
- 2300 Elinder, C.-G. (1986). Zinc. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. *Handbook on the toxicology of*  
2301 *metals*. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.
- 2302 EVM (2003). Expert Group on Vitamins and Minerals. Safe Upper Levels for Vitamins and Minerals.  
2303 Available at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/cot/vitmin2003.pdf>
- 2304 Florence, T.M., Batley, G.E. (1980). Chemical speciation in natural waters. *CRC Critical Reviews in*  
2305 *Analytical Chemistry*. p. 219-296.
- 2306 FSA (2014). Measurement of the concentrations of metals and other elements from the 2014 UK total  
2307 diet study. Available at [https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)  
2308 [metals-and-other-elements](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)
- 2309 ICH harmonised guideline for elemental impurities ICH Q3D(R1) Final version Adopted on 22 March  
2310 2019. Available at <https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D->  
2311 [R1EWG\\_Document\\_Step4\\_Guideline\\_2019\\_0322.pdf](https://database.ich.org/sites/default/files/Q3D-R1EWG_Document_Step4_Guideline_2019_0322.pdf).
- 2312 IUNA (2011). National Adult Nutrition Survey. Irish Universities Nutrition Alliance. Available at  
2313 <https://www.iuna.net/surveyreports>
- 2314 JECFA (1982). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Twenty-sixth report of the Joint  
2315 FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organization, Technical Report Series  
2316 683.
- 2317 JRC (2008). European Union risk assessment report: Zinc oxide. R073\_0805\_env. Available at  
2318 <https://echa.europa.eu/documents/10162/596b1f42-8bfe-48f8-86f4-cd98fe6b7041>
- 2319 SCF (2003). Opinion of the Scientific Committee on Food on the tolerable upper intake level of Zinc,  
2320 European Commission, 2003.
- 2321 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality: fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
2322 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at  
2323 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

## 2324 Zirconium (Zr)

- 2325 Zirconium is the 20<sup>th</sup> most common element in the Earth's crust and is found as compounds in many  
2326 mineral forms. It does not occur in nature as a free element. Zirconium most commonly occurs as  
2327 zircon ( $ZrSiO_4$ ) and as baddeleyite ( $ZrO_2$  or zirconia). There is no evidence that zirconium is essential  
2328 to man. Zirconium is highly resistant to heat and corrosion. It is primarily used in metallic materials

2329 within the aviation and aerospace industries, in chemical and surgical instruments and in nuclear  
2330 reactor technology. Other products that contain zirconium compounds include cosmetics and  
2331 jewellery. Zirconium is also used for the manufacture of cast iron, steel, ceramics, enamels, paints,  
2332 pigments, preservatives, coatings, abrasives, refractories, tanning agents and water repellents (HSDB,  
2333 ILO).

## 2334 Sources and levels of intake

2335 Zirconium is a naturally occurring and widely distributed element. It is present at concentrations  
2336 ranging from 150 to 300 mg/kg within the Earth's crust (HSDB) and about 0.026 µg/L in seawater  
2337 (Peterson et al., 2007). Zirconium compounds can be released into the air and surface or ground water  
2338 through weathering of rocks and soils and are taken up by plants, including edible fruits and vegetables  
2339 (Ghosh et al., 1992). Zirconium can be found in all animal tissues, generally below 10 µg/g wet tissue  
2340 (Health Council of The Netherlands, 2002). In food products, elevated levels of zirconium have been  
2341 found in lamb, pork, eggs, dairy products, grains and vegetables, with concentrations generally varying  
2342 between 3 and 10 ppm (HSDB).

2343 Exposure to zirconium can occur through the inhalation of ambient air containing low levels of  
2344 zirconium, ingestion of certain foods and via dermal contact with consumer products containing  
2345 zirconium compounds, such as cosmetics. Estimations of the daily oral intake of zirconium in man vary  
2346 from 3.5 to 4 mg, but have been reported to be as high as 125 mg. The average body burden is 260  
2347 mg (HSDB).

## 2348 Metallic food contact materials

2349 Zirconium is used in a wide variety of materials. Certain applications (i.e. refractories, enamels and  
2350 coating for casting moulds) make the presence of zirconium in metallic food contact materials more  
2351 likely. A specific example is the use of zirconium compounds as passivation agents for tin-plated steel.

## 2352 Other food contact materials

2353 Zirconium (II) is a component of some Ziegler-Natta catalysts, used to produce polypropylene (Shamiri  
2354 et al., 2014). Because of its mechanical strength and flexibility, zirconium dioxide (ZrO<sub>2</sub>) is used for  
2355 sintering into ceramic knives.

## 2356 Release

2357 The release of zirconium into foodstuffs will potentially depend on the specific compound and its  
2358 associated chemical properties, most importantly solubility. Since no data has been published on the  
2359 concentrations of zirconium in food contact materials, the release of zirconium from these materials  
2360 into foodstuffs cannot be assessed.

## 2361 Safety aspects

2362 A maximum limit for zirconium in stainless steel was imposed in France, stating that zirconium can  
2363 only make up 1% of the alloy (French Decree of 13 January 1976; JRC, 2017).

2364 In the USA, zirconium oxide is permitted for use in conversion coatings on the interior of tin-plated  
2365 steel containers (cans), with or without a polymeric topcoat. The coating may be applied to the food-  
2366 contact surface at a maximum coating weight of 9 mg/m<sup>2</sup>. The finished coating may be in contact with  
2367 all food types, with the exception of liquid (concentrate and ready to feed) infant formula (NCBI; FDA).

2368 The administrative exposure limit (MAC) for zirconium and zirconium compounds in the Netherlands  
2369 is 5 mg/m<sup>3</sup>, 8-hour TWA (time-weighted average) (Health Council of the Netherlands, 2002).

2370 The route of absorption and excretion has not been established for all zirconium compounds and  
2371 depends on the route and duration of exposure (Ghosh et al., 1992). Most zirconium compounds are  
2372 poorly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract into the bloodstream. Following oral absorption,  
2373 absorption percentages of 0.2 and 0.001% have been reported. The predominant excretion route is  
2374 via the faeces; very little is excreted in the urine. Tissue levels are generally below 10 µg/g wet tissue  
2375 (Health Council of The Netherlands, 2002). Milk is a second route of excretion. Significant amounts of  
2376 zirconium have also been found in foetuses (HSDB).

2377 Regarding the toxicity of zirconium, few animal studies are available and these show non-uniform  
2378 results among the different zirconium compounds. In humans, few case reports are available, some  
2379 of which suggest toxic effects after exposure to zirconium compounds via different routes (mostly  
2380 inhalation); others show no zirconium-related effects (HSDB). Overall, based on the available  
2381 literature, no definitive conclusion can be drawn on the potential for zirconium to produce toxic  
2382 effects. The Dutch Health Council concluded in 2012 that the available toxicological database on  
2383 zirconium and its compounds was too poor to justify recommendation of a health-based occupational  
2384 limit, including the exposure limit (MAC) stated in the Netherlands (Health Council of the Netherlands,  
2385 2002).

2386 A specific migration limit (SML) of 2 mg/kg has been established for zirconium used for passivation of  
2387 metals and alloys in the Netherlands (Dutch WVG), in combination with the following provisions: “For  
2388 contact with acidic foods, conformity with this SML is to be tested in the relevant food product, or  
2389 alternatively with 1.5% citric acid. If the properties of acetic acid predominate in the foodstuffs with  
2390 which the metal comes into contact, the metal passivated with zirconium must be coated with organic  
2391 polymers. This provision does not apply to zirconium passivated metal in contact with non-acidic food  
2392 or in contact with food in which the properties of acids other than acetic acid predominate.”

## 2393 **Conclusions and recommendations**

2394 “the SRL for zirconium is set at 2 mg/kg”

2395 Given the lack of data available to derive a TDI, the CD-P-MCA has decided to use the SRL of 2 mg/kg  
2396 as set for zirconium in the legislation on FCM in the Netherlands. For acidic foods, conformity with the  
2397 SRL should be tested in the relevant food product, or alternatively with 0.5% citric acid. Zirconium-  
2398 passivated metals should not be used in direct contact with food with predominantly acetic acidic  
2399 properties, but it can be used in direct contact with other types of food, including acidic food in which  
2400 the properties of acids other than acetic acid (e.g. citric acid) predominate.

## 2401 **References**

2402 Dutch WVG (2022). “Commodities Act; Regulation on packaging and consumer products”  
2403 (Warenwetregeling verpakkingen en gebruiksartikelen), Annex part A, Chapter IV “Metals”  
2404 <https://wetten.overheid.nl/BWBR0034991>

2405 FDA. Inventory of Effective Food Contact Substance (FCS) Notifications (FCN No. 1253). Available at  
2406 <https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/fdcc/index.cfm?set=IndirectAdditives&id=ZIRCONIUMOXID>  
2407 E, accessed 20 September 2021.

2408 French Decree of 13 January 1976 relatif aux matériaux et objets en acier inoxydable au contact des  
2409 denrées alimentaires (Journal officiel du 31 janvier 1976). Available (in French) at  
2410 <https://www.legifrance.gouv.fr/jorf/id/JORFTEXT000000637961>

2411 Ghosh, S., Sharma, A., Talukder, G. (1992). Zirconium. An abnormal trace element in biology. Biological  
2412 Trace Element Research. Vol. 35, p. 247-271.

2413 Health Council of the Netherlands (Gezondheidsraad), 2002. Zirconium and zirconium compounds  
2414 (CAS No: 7440-67-7). Health-based Reassessment of Administrative Occupational Exposure Limits; No.  
2415 2000/15OSH/059, The Hague, 31 October 2002.

2416 HSDB; Hazardous Substances Data Base. Zirconium compounds. Available at  
2417 <https://pubchem.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/source/hsdb/7347>, accessed 21 October 2021.

2418 ILO. Encyclopaedia of Occupational Health & Safety. Part IX. Chemicals; Metals, Zirconium and  
2419 Hafnium. Available at [https://www.iloencyclopaedia.org/part-ix-21851/metals-chemical-properties-](https://www.iloencyclopaedia.org/part-ix-21851/metals-chemical-properties-and-toxicity/item/198-zirconium-and-hafnium)  
2420 [and-toxicity/item/198-zirconium-and-hafnium](https://www.iloencyclopaedia.org/part-ix-21851/metals-chemical-properties-and-toxicity/item/198-zirconium-and-hafnium), accessed 20 September 2021.

2421 JRC (2017). Non-harmonised food contact materials in the EU: regulatory and market situation.  
2422 Available at  
2423 [http://publications.jrc.ec.europa.eu/repository/bitstream/JRC104198/en\\_jrc104198\\_fcm%20baselin](http://publications.jrc.ec.europa.eu/repository/bitstream/JRC104198/en_jrc104198_fcm%20baseline%20final%20report%202017-01-16_all.pdf)  
2424 [e%20final%20report%202017-01-16\\_all.pdf](http://publications.jrc.ec.europa.eu/repository/bitstream/JRC104198/en_jrc104198_fcm%20baseline%20final%20report%202017-01-16_all.pdf)

2425 NCBI; National Center for Biotechnology Information PubChem Compound Database; CID=62395.  
2426 Available at <https://pubchem.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/compound/62395>, accessed 20 September 2021.

2427 Peterson, J., MacDonell, M., Haroun, L., Monette, F. (2007). "Zirconium". Radiological and Chemical  
2428 Fact Sheets to Support Health Risk Analyses for Contaminated Areas. Argonne National Laboratory.  
2429 p. 64-65. Available at  
2430 [https://web.archive.org/web/20080528130257/http://www.evs.anl.gov/pub/doc/ANL\\_Contaminant](https://web.archive.org/web/20080528130257/http://www.evs.anl.gov/pub/doc/ANL_Contaminant)  
2431 [FactSheets\\_All\\_070418.pdf](https://web.archive.org/web/20080528130257/http://www.evs.anl.gov/pub/doc/ANL_Contaminant)

2432 Shamiri, A., Chakrabarti, M.H., Jahan, S., Hussain, M.A., Kaminsky, W., Aravind, P.V., Yehye, W.A.  
2433 (2014). The Influence of Ziegler-Natta and Metallocene Catalysts on Polyolefin Structure, Properties,  
2434 and Processing Ability. Materials (Basel). Vol. 7 (7), p. 5069-5108.

## 2435 **Metal contaminants and impurities**

2436 The following metals are relevant contaminants and impurities that may occur in food contact  
2437 materials and articles.

2438 Arsenic (As)

2439 Barium (Ba)

2440 Beryllium (Be)

2441 Cadmium (Cd)

2442 Lead (Pb)

2443 Lithium (Li)

2444 Mercury (Hg)

2445 Thallium (Tl)

## 2446 **Arsenic (As)**

2447 Arsenic is the 54<sup>th</sup> most abundant element in the Earth's crust, which contains 1.8 mg/kg of arsenic  
2448 down to a depth of 16 km.

2449 It is a notoriously toxic metalloid that has numerous allotropic forms: yellow (non-metallic allotrope);  
2450 several black and grey (metalloids). Several hundreds of these mineral species are known.

2451 Arsenic and its compounds are used as pesticides, herbicides and insecticides.

2452 The arsenic content of some iron ores is similar to their phosphorus content. Both substances enter  
2453 the steel production as impurities from raw materials and/or processing contaminants and may  
2454 adversely affect steel quality. The presence of arsenic reduces impact strength of steel.

## 2455 **Sources and levels of intake**

2456 Seafood and fish are foodstuffs rich in arsenic. Many types of vegetable also contain arsenic (e.g.  
2457 cabbage and spinach) (Schoof et al., 1999; Guéguen et al., 2011; Arnich et al., 2012). It is also found in  
2458 some sources of drinking-water.

2459 Making a number of assumptions for the contribution of inorganic arsenic to total arsenic, the  
2460 inorganic arsenic exposure from food and water across 19 European countries, using lower bound and  
2461 upper bound concentrations, has been estimated to range from 0.13 to 0.56 µg/kg body weight/day  
2462 for average consumers, and from 0.37 to 1.22 µg/kg body weight/day for 95th percentile consumers.  
2463 Dietary exposure to inorganic arsenic for children under three years of age is in general estimated to  
2464 be from 2 to 3-fold that of adults (EFSA, 2009). ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake of inorganic  
2465 arsenic at 0.28 µg/kg bw/day in adults and 0.39 µg/kg bw/day in children (according to upper bound  
2466 concentrations).

## 2467 **Metallic food contact materials**

2468 Some of the less common food contact alloys can contain arsenic. Special types of brass are obtained  
2469 by incorporating one or more additional elements such as tin, aluminium, manganese, nickel, iron,  
2470 silicon or even arsenic, which improves some of their properties, particularly their mechanical  
2471 characteristics, mostly to increase their resistance to corrosion.

2472 In France, tin or tin alloys and articles exclusively coated with tin or tin alloy or partly tin-plated, which  
2473 as finished products are designed to come into direct, recurrent contact with foodstuffs, must not  
2474 exceed a maximum arsenic content of 0.030% (French Decree of 28 June 1912).

## 2475 **Other food contact materials**

2476 Arsenic is used in the processing of the following products: glass, pigments, textiles, paper, metal  
2477 adhesives, ceramics and wood conservation agents.

2478 Orpiment is an arsenic sulphide mineral found naturally or produced artificially. It is also known in  
2479 French as jaune d'arsenic. It has a fine, golden yellow colour and has been known since the second  
2480 millennium BC. Its use as a pigment was abandoned after the arrival of cadmium pigments in the 19th  
2481 century.

## 2482 **Release**

2483 No information available.

## 2484 **Safety Aspects**

2485 – WHO (2017) established a provisional guideline value for arsenic in drinking-water of 0.01 mg/L on  
2486 the basis of treatment performance and analytical achievability.

2487 – The JECFA PTWI 15 µg/kg body weight/week (2.1 µg/kg body weight/day) for arsenic was set in 1988  
2488 (JECFA, 1989). In 2010, at the recent 72nd JECFA meeting, arsenic was reassessed and a benchmark  
2489 dose approach was used to assess the epidemiological data available. The inorganic arsenic lower limit  
2490 of the benchmark dose for a 0.5% increased incidence of lung cancer (BMDL05) was determined from  
2491 epidemiological studies to be 3.0 µg/kg body weight/day (2-7 µg/kg body weight/day based on the  
2492 range of estimated total dietary exposure) using a range of assumptions to estimate total dietary  
2493 exposure to inorganic arsenic from drinking-water and food. As the previous PTWI (JECFA1989) is  
2494 within this range, it was no longer considered appropriate and it has since been withdrawn (JECFA,  
2495 2010).

2496 – In their 2008 statement the COT considered that inorganic arsenic is genotoxic and a known human  
2497 carcinogen and, therefore, exposure should be as low as reasonably practicable (COT, 2008).

2498 – EFSA (2009, 2010) used a benchmark dose (BMD) approach to assess arsenic, using data from key  
2499 epidemiological studies and noting other modelling results. A benchmark response of 1% extra risk  
2500 was selected and the range of the 95% lower confidence interval of the dose (BMDL01) causing this  
2501 response was considered. Lung cancer had the lowest BMDL01, with an overall range of 0.3-8.0 µg/kg  
2502 body weight/day. There is little or no margin of exposure between estimated dietary exposure and  
2503 this range and therefore the possibility of a risk to consumers cannot be excluded.

## 2504 **Conclusions and recommendations**

2505 “the SRL for arsenic is set at 0.002 mg/kg”

2506 Arsenic can be found in the form of impurities in many metals and alloys. Efforts are therefore needed  
2507 to prevent its possible release.

2508 In light of the recent COT, EFSA and JECFA assessments (COT, 2008; EFSA, 2009; JECFA, 2010), using  
2509 JECFA (1989) PTWI as a basis for deriving a specific release limit was not considered appropriate.  
2510 Instead, the lower end of the BMDL01 from the EFSA (2009) assessment was used, resulting in a limit  
2511 of 0.0003 mg/kg body weight/day (0.018 mg/day). As arsenic is considered an impurity in the metallic  
2512 material, it was concluded that an allowance of 10% of the toxicological reference values was  
2513 reasonable. Therefore, assuming a person of 60 kg body weight consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per day  
2514 that is packaged and/or prepared with food contact materials made from metals and alloys, the SRL  
2515 for arsenic is set at 0.002 mg/kg.

## 2516 **References**

2517 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
2518 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

2519 Arnich N, Sirot V, Rivière G, Jean J, Noël L, Guérin T, Leblanc JC, (2012). Dietary exposure to trace  
2520 elements and health risk assessment in the 2<sup>nd</sup> French Total Diet Study. Food Chem Toxicol. 2012 Jul;  
2521 50(7):2432-49. doi: 10.1016/j.fct.2012.04.016..

2522 COT (2008). COT Statement on the 2006 UK Total Diet Study of Metals and Other Elements. Available  
2523 at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/cot/cotstatementtds200808.pdf>

2524 EFSA (2009, 2010). EFSA Panel on Contaminants in the Food Chain (CONTAM); Scientific Opinion on  
2525 Arsenic in Food. EFSA Journal 2009; 7(10):1351. [199 pp.]. DOI:10.2903/j.efsa.2009.1351.

2526 French decree of 28 June 1912 on coloration of food products. Claisse D, Guérin T, Vernoux JP, (2011).  
2527 Shellfish and residual chemical contaminants: hazards, monitoring, and health risk assessment along  
2528 French coasts. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol. 2011; 213:55-111. doi: 10.1007/978-1-4419-9860-6\_3.

2529 JECFA (1989). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Thirty-third report of the Joint  
2530 FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organization. Geneva. Available at  
2531 <https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/39252>.

2532 JECFA (2010). Evaluation of certain food contaminants. Seventy-second meeting of the Joint  
2533 FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. FAO/WHO, Rome. Available at  
2534 <https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/44514>.

2535 Schoof, R.A., Yost, L.J., Eickoff, J., Crecelius, E.A., Cragin. W., Meacher, D.M., Menzel, D.B. (1999). A  
2536 market basket survey of inorganic food. Food and Chemical Technology, 37, 839-846.

2537 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality. Fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
2538 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at  
2539 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

## 2540 **Barium (Ba)**

2541 The mineral Barytine is the raw material from which virtually all barium compounds are derived. World  
2542 production of barite in 1985 was estimated at 5.7 million tonnes (WHO, 1990). Barium and its  
2543 compounds are used in various industrial products, ranging from ceramics to lubricants. It is also used  
2544 in the manufacture of alloys, as a weighting element for paper, soap, rubber and linoleum, and in the  
2545 manufacture of valves (WHO, 1990).

## 2546 Sources and levels of intake

2547 The main sources of barium in the human diet are milk, potatoes and flour. Some cereal products and  
2548 nuts tend to have high barium content, e.g. groundnuts, bran flakes and Brazil nuts (WHO, 1990).  
2549 Some plant species accumulate barium when they grow in a soil rich in this element (WHO, 1990).

2550 In the British total diet study, the highest total mean and 97.5<sup>th</sup> percentile exposures were in the 1.5  
2551 to 3 years age class and were 20 µg/kg bw/day and 33 µg/kg bw/day, respectively (FSA, 2014).

2552 ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 0.38 mg/day (6.4 µg/kg body weight/day) in adults and  
2553 10.2 µg/kg body weight/day in children.

## 2554 Metallic food contact materials

2555 Barium is to be found in certain metals and alloys in the form of impurities. Barium reacts strongly  
2556 with metals to form metal alloys. Iron is the most resistant metal to barium. Barium forms inter-metal  
2557 compounds and alloys with lead, potassium, platinum, magnesium, silicon, zinc, aluminium and  
2558 mercury (Hansen, 1958). Metallic barium reduces oxides, halides, sulphides and most of the less  
2559 reactive metals, resulting in their elemental state. It is therefore used in molten salt baths for thermal  
2560 treatment of metals. Metal bromates [Ba(BrO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>] are used for preparing rare-earth bromates and  
2561 inhibiting corrosion in low-carbon steels. It is used in aluminium refining and leather tanning. The  
2562 chromate (BaCrO<sub>4</sub>) is an anti-corrosion pigment for metals. It is used in alloys with aluminium,  
2563 magnesium and nickel for specific applications.

## 2564 Other food contact materials

2565 Barium and barium compounds are used in ceramics and as a weighting element for paper, rubber  
2566 and valve manufacture.

2567 The chloride, BaCl<sub>2</sub>, is used in the pigment, lacquer and glass industries. In the dyeing industry, it is  
2568 used as a mordant and load, as well as in dyeing textile fibres. The chromate, BaCrO<sub>4</sub>, is also used to  
2569 colour glass, ceramics and porcelain.

## 2570 Release

2571 No information available.

## 2572 Safety aspects

2573 – EPA (1985) derived a Reference Dose (RfD) of 0.2 mg/kg/day. In 2005 the EPA reassessed barium  
2574 and confirmed the RfD for barium of 0.2 mg/kg body weight/day. However, new studies were taken

2575 into consideration and a benchmark dose lower confidence limit (BMDL) approach was chosen.  
2576 Consequently, the RfD was derived from a BMDL5 of 63 mg/kg body weight/day for a 5% increased  
2577 risk of nephropathy in mice with an uncertainty factor of 300 (100 for intra- and inter-species  
2578 variability and 3 for database deficiencies).

2579 – Health Canada (Federal Ministry) (1990) recommendations on drinking water estimate the average  
2580 intake of barium at 1 mg/day.

2581 – WHO (2001) specified a TDI of 0.02 mg/kg body weight/day (1.2 mg/day) from an epidemiological  
2582 study. In that study, populations from two cities having a 70-fold difference in drinking water  
2583 concentrations of barium were investigated. Significant differences in cardiovascular effects, however,  
2584 could not be detected. Using the higher barium drinking water concentration of the two cities  
2585 compared, a TDI of 0.21 mg/kg body weight/day was derived and divided by an uncertainty factor of  
2586 10 to account for database deficiencies and possible differences between adults and children.

2587 – WHO (2017) established a guideline value for barium in drinking water of 1.3 mg/L.

2588 – In their 2008 statement, the UK COT considered that since the WHO TDI was based on studies that  
2589 did not show statistically significant effects, it was possible that the LOAEL could be much higher than  
2590 the NOAEL and, therefore, the TDI could be overly conservative (COT, 2008). The COT concluded that  
2591 exposures of up to 4-fold above the TDI were not necessarily a toxicological concern.

## 2592 **Conclusions and recommendations**

2593 “the SRL for barium is set at 1.2 mg/kg”

2594 It was decided to use the EPA RfD of 0.2 mg/kg body weight/day (12 mg/day) to derive the SRL. As  
2595 barium is considered an impurity in the metallic material, it was concluded that an allowance of 10%  
2596 of the toxicological reference value was reasonable. Therefore, assuming that a person of 60 kg body  
2597 weight consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared with food contact  
2598 materials made from metals and alloys, the SRL for barium is set at 1.2 mg/kg.

## 2599 **References**

2600 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
2601 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

2602 COT (2008). COT Statement on the 2006 UK Total Diet Study of Metals and Other Elements. Available  
2603 at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/cot/cotstatementtlds200808.pdf>

2604 EPA (1985). US Environmental Protection Agency Health advisory – Barium. Office of Drinking Water.

2605 EPA (2005). Toxicological Review of Barium and Compounds. In Support of Summary Information on  
2606 the Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS). US Environmental Protection Agency. Washington, DC.  
2607 EPA/635/R-05/001. Available at  
2608 [https://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/iris/iris\\_documents/documents/toxreviews/0010tr.pdf](https://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/iris/iris_documents/documents/toxreviews/0010tr.pdf).

2609 FSA (2014). Measurement of the concentrations of metals and other elements from the 2014 UK total  
2610 diet study. Available at [https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)  
2611 [metals-and-other-elements](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)

2612 Hansen, M. (1958). Constitution of binary alloys. New York, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc.

2613 Health Canada (1990). Guidelines for Canadian Drinking Water Quality: Technical Documents, Barium.  
2614 Available at <https://tinyurl.com/mtvza8s3>

2615 WHO (1990). World Health Organization, IPCS INCHEM Environmental Health Criteria 107. Barium.  
2616 ISBN 92 4 157107 1. Available at <https://incchem.org/documents/ehc/ehc/ehc107.htm>

2617 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality. Fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
2618 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at  
2619 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

## 2620 **Beryllium (Be)**

2621 Beryllium has the highest melting point of all the light metals. It is lighter and six times more resilient  
2622 than aluminium. It is approximately 1½ times more ductile than steel. It is an excellent heat conductor,  
2623 is non-magnetic and is resistant to concentrated nitric acid. Under normal conditions of temperature  
2624 and pressure beryllium is oxidation-resistant when exposed to air. A thin layer of oxide is formed,  
2625 making it hard enough to scratch glass.

2626 In nature, it is mainly found in the form of oxides or complex beryllium-aluminium-silicates known as  
2627 beryls, the best-known gemstone variants of which are emeralds and aquamarines.

2628 In view of the scarcity of beryllium in nature (3 mg/kg), it raises no particular environmental concerns,  
2629 but its industrial use in coal mining, aeronautics and the nuclear arms industry leads to its dispersal in  
2630 the air and its deposition in the environment, contaminating water, soil, air and the human body (Mroz  
2631 et al., 2001). There is also controversy about its use in dentistry, for dental prostheses (Mroz et al.,  
2632 2001).

2633 It is mainly used as a hardening agent in alloys such as moldamax, a copper-beryllium alloy used for  
2634 manufacturing moulds for plastics.

2635 Its alloys are light, rigid, heat-resistant and have a low dilation coefficient. It is incorporated into some  
2636 special alloys, e.g. materials used for friction.

## 2637 **Sources and levels of intake**

2638 The intake in the USA, as estimated by the EPA (1987, 1998), is 0.42 µg/day via water and food (0.12  
2639 µg/day from food and 0.3 µg/day from water). Much of the intake is, therefore, deemed to come from  
2640 drinking-water. On the other hand the WHO (2017) states that beryllium is unlikely to occur in  
2641 drinking-water and consequently, it has been “excluded from guideline value derivation”. Results from  
2642 a duplicate diet study in Spain estimated the dietary intake of beryllium equal to 19 µg/day (Domingo  
2643 et al., 2011).

## 2644 **Metallic food contact materials**

2645 Beryllium can be found in the form of impurities in some metals and alloys, though seldom as an alloy  
2646 component. Although beryllium is theoretically highly unlikely to come into contact with food, its use  
2647 in plumbing, boiler-making and piping cannot be precluded.

## 2648 **Other food contact materials**

2649 Beryllium oxide can potentially be used in the ceramics industry, but there is no evidence of it being  
2650 used for ceramics coming into contact with food.

## 2651 **Release**

2652 No information available.

## 2653 **Safety aspects**

2654 – The EPA (1998) recommended a Reference Dose (RfD) of 0.002 mg/kg body weight/day (i.e. 0.12  
2655 mg/day for a person weighing 60 kg) for beryllium. EPA (1987) estimated beryllium intake in the USA  
2656 at 0.423 µg/day via water and food, which is negligible compared to the RfD.

2657 – The WHO (1990) and more recently, the WHO (2001) show that there is little data available on oral  
2658 toxicity of beryllium and the bulk of the information available pertains to inhalation toxicity and, in  
2659 particular, the effects of inhalation in occupationally-exposed workers. The WHO (2001) derived an  
2660 oral tolerable intake of 0.002 mg/kg body weight/day. This value was estimated using the BMD10 of  
2661 0.46 mg/kg body weight/day at the lower 95% confidence limit for a 10% incidence of small intestinal  
2662 lesions in dogs chronically exposed to beryllium sulphate tetrahydrate and considered equal to the  
2663 NOAEL. In addition, an uncertainty factor of 300 (10 for inter-species, 10 for intra-species variation  
2664 and 3 for database deficiencies due to a lack of data on developmental effects or mechanistic data,  
2665 suggesting this may be an issue) was applied.

## 2666 **Conclusions and recommendations**

2667 “the SRL for beryllium is set at 0.01 mg/kg”

2668 The proven high toxicity of beryllium means that any potential release must be limited.

2669 The SRL for beryllium was derived on the basis of the oral tolerable intake of 0.002 mg/kg body  
2670 weight/day (0.12 mg/day) (WHO, 2001). As beryllium is considered an impurity in the metallic  
2671 material, it was concluded that an allowance of 10% of the toxicological reference value was  
2672 reasonable. Therefore, assuming that a person of 60 kg body weight consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per  
2673 day that is packaged and/or prepared with food contact materials made from metals and alloys, the  
2674 SRL for beryllium is set at 0.01 mg/kg.

2675 **References**

2676 Domingo, J.L., Perelló, G., Giné Bordonaba, J. (2011). Dietary Intake of Metals by the Population of  
2677 Tarragona County (Catalonia, Spain): Results from a Duplicate Diet Study. *Biological Trace Element*  
2678 *Research*, pp. 1-6.

2679 EPA (1987). Health Assessment Document for Beryllium. EPA/600/8-84/026F

2680 EPA (1998). Toxicological review of Beryllium and compounds. EPA/635/R-98/008. Available  
2681 at [https://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/iris/iris\\_documents/documents/toxreviews/0012tr.pdf](https://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/iris/iris_documents/documents/toxreviews/0012tr.pdf)

2682 Mroz, M.M., Balkissoon, R., Newman, L.S. (2001). Beryllium. In: Bingham E., Cohn B., Powell C.  
2683 (eds.). *Patty's Toxicology, Fifth Edition*. New York: John Wiley & Sons 2001, 177-220.

2684 WHO (1990). World Health Organization, IPCS INCHEM Environmental Health Criteria 106. Beryllium.  
2685 ISBN 92 4 157106 3. Available at <https://incchem.org/documents/ehc/ehc/ehc106.htm>

2686 WHO (2001). World Health Organization, IPCS INCHEM Concise International Chemical Assessment  
2687 Document 32. Beryllium and beryllium compounds. ISBN 92 4 153032 4. Available at  
2688 <https://incchem.org/documents/cicads/cicads/cicad32.htm>

2689 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality. Fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.

2690 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at

2691 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

2692 **Cadmium (Cd)**

2693 Cadmium is one of the metallic elements of most concern in the food and environment of man.  
2694 Cadmium is widely distributed, occurring in all soils and rocks, including coal, in very low  
2695 concentrations (<0.1 mg/kg) (ATSDR, 2012; Lind, 1997). Also, zinc ores contain cadmium, which is  
2696 emitted during the melting of zinc (Friberg et al., 1986). Cadmium is a relatively rare element (Codex  
2697 Standard 193-1995) and current analytical procedures indicate much lower concentrations of the  
2698 metal in environmental media than previous measurements had shown due to improved sampling  
2699 and analytical techniques (WHO, 1992). Phosphate fertilisers and sewage sludge used on agricultural  
2700 land may be significant sources of cadmium (Friberg et al., 1986).  
2701 Cadmium metal was previously used as an anti-corrosive, electroplate on steel (Friberg et al., 1986).  
2702 Cadmium can be replaced by other less toxic materials, for instance in batteries.

2703 **Sources and levels of intake**

2704 Cadmium is found in most foodstuffs in the range of 0.005-0.1 mg/kg (Friberg et al., 1986). Certain  
2705 foodstuffs, e.g. mushrooms, kidneys and oysters, may contain much higher concentrations (Friberg et  
2706 al., 1986). The lowest levels of cadmium are found in dairy products and beverages (European  
2707 Commission, 2004). Vegetables, cereals and cereal products contribute most to cadmium intakes.

2708 The mean dietary exposure across European countries was calculated to be 2.3 µg/kg body  
2709 weight/week and the high exposure was calculated to be 3.0 µg/kg body weight/week. Due to their

2710 high consumption of cereals, nuts, oilseeds and pulses, vegetarians have a greater dietary exposure  
2711 of up to 5.4 µg/kg body weight/week. Regular consumers of bivalve molluscs and wild mushrooms  
2712 were also found to have higher dietary exposures of 4.6 and 4.3 µg/kg body weight/week, respectively  
2713 (EFSA, 2009). ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 1.12 µg/kg body weight/week in adults  
2714 and 1.68 µg/kg body weight/week in children.

2715 Tobacco smoking can contribute to a similar internal exposure as that from the diet. House dust can  
2716 be an important source of exposure for children (EFSA, 2009).

## 2717 **Metallic food contact materials**

2718 The use of cadmium-plated utensils in food processing and preparation is forbidden according to  
2719 Regulation (EC) No. 1907/2006. Cadmium can occur as impurity in zinc galvanised pipes and in solders  
2720 (Friberg et al., 1986).

## 2721 **Other food contact materials**

2722 Cadmium sulphide and cadmium selenide have been used as red, yellow and orange colour pigments  
2723 in plastics and various types of paint (Friberg et al., 1986). Cadmium stearate was previously used as  
2724 a stabiliser in plastics (Friberg et al., 1986). Cadmium can also be used as a pigment in certain enamels  
2725 in food contact materials. Leachable cadmium in enamel pottery and glazes may be a source of  
2726 contamination.

## 2727 **Release**

2728 The release information on cadmium is limited. Cadmium, like zinc, loses its lustre in moist air and is  
2729 rapidly corroded by moist NH<sub>3</sub> and SO<sub>2</sub>. It is readily attacked by most acids, but more slowly than zinc  
2730 (Beliles, 1994). One study could be identified where the release of cadmium from pewter cups was  
2731 investigated. Using different beverages (e.g. wine, beer) and simulants (e. g. vinegar, 3% acetic acid),  
2732 a release of cadmium ranging from < LOD (beer) to 8.2 µg/L (3% acetic acid) was measured (Dessuy et  
2733 al., 2011).

## 2734 **Safety aspects**

2735 – JECFA (1993) established a PTWI at 0.007 mg/kg body weight/week, stating that “the PTWI does not  
2736 include a safety factor” and that “there is only a relatively small safety margin between exposure in  
2737 the normal diet and exposure that produces deleterious effects”. This value was confirmed by the  
2738 JECFA in 2003. During their 73rd meeting in 2010, the JECFA withdrew the PTWI of 0.007 mg/kg body  
2739 weight/week and replaced it by a provisional tolerable monthly intake (PTMI) of 0.025 mg/kg body  
2740 weight/month, due to the exceptional long half-life of cadmium (JECFA, 2010).

2741 – WHO (2017) established a guideline value for cadmium in drinking-water of 0.003 mg/L.

2742 – In the EU the limit for cadmium in drinking-water has been set to 0.005 mg/L (Directive 2020/2184).

2743 – Cadmium is unique among the metals because of its combination of toxicity in low dosages, long  
2744 biologic half-life (about 30 years in humans), its low rate of excretion from the body, and the fact that

2745 it is stored predominantly in the soft tissues (liver and kidney) (Beliles, 1994). The PTWI is based upon  
2746 kidney damage and the long half-life of cadmium. The effects of cadmium on humans are  
2747 nephrotoxicity, osteotoxicity, cardiovascular-toxicity, genotoxicity and effects on reproduction and  
2748 development (EFSA, 2009). Kidney damage also occurs as a result of cadmium exposure (Beliles, 1994).  
2749 Occasional peaks in cadmium intake may cause a drastic increase in fractional absorption of cadmium  
2750 (Lind, 1997). Ingestion of highly contaminated foodstuffs or drinks results in acute gastrointestinal  
2751 effects in the form of diarrhoea and vomiting (Friberg et al., 1986). About 5% of ingested cadmium is  
2752 absorbed (Friberg et al., 1986). The speciation of cadmium in foodstuffs may be of importance for the  
2753 evaluation of the health hazards associated with areas of cadmium contamination or high cadmium  
2754 intake (WHO, 1992). The bioavailability of cadmium differs depending on the form of cadmium  
2755 present. For instance, cadmium of animal origin has been shown to have a lower bioavailability in mice  
2756 than cadmium of vegetable origin (Lind, 1997). Cooking does not seem to alter the bioavailability of  
2757 cadmium of animal origin.

2758 – EFSA (2009) has derived a TWI for cadmium of 0.0025 mg/kg body weight/week. This TWI was  
2759 derived from dose-response data between urinary cadmium concentrations and urinary beta-2-  
2760 microglobulin (B2M), a marker for tubular effects in kidneys. Using the benchmark dose lower  
2761 confidence limit for a 5% increase in the prevalence of elevated B2M (BMDL5) resulted in a limit of 1  
2762 µg Cd/g creatinine. Subsequently, the dietary cadmium intake that corresponds to a concentration  
2763 below 1 µg Cd/g creatinine in the urine was estimated from exposure data, resulting in the above TWI.

## 2764 **Conclusions and recommendations**

2765 “the SRL for cadmium is set at 0.005 mg/kg”

2766 The use of cadmium in metals and alloys in materials in contact with foodstuffs is unacceptable due  
2767 to its long biological half-life (about 30 years in humans) and its high toxicity.

2768 Electroplated equipment should be coated.

2769 The SRL was derived from the EFSA (2009) assessment, rather than from that of JECFA (2010), because  
2770 it resulted in a more conservative limit. Using the EFSA (2009) TWI of 0.0025 mg/kg body weight/week  
2771 as a starting-point resulted in a TDI of 0.00036 mg/kg body weight/day (0.02 mg/person/day). Using  
2772 an allowance of 10% of the toxicological reference value and assuming that a person of 60 kg body  
2773 weight consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared with food contact  
2774 materials made from metals and alloys, the calculated limit for cadmium would be at 0.002 mg/kg.

2775 However, it was decided to set the SRL at 0.005 mg/kg, which is consistent with the limit for cadmium  
2776 stated in Directive 2020/2184. This equals an allowance of 25% of the toxicological reference value.

## 2777 **References**

2778 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
2779 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

- 2780 ATSDR (2012). Toxicological profile for cadmium. US department of Health and Human Services. Public  
2781 Health Service. Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry. Available at  
2782 <https://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/ToxProfiles/tp5.pdf>
- 2783 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, Fourth edition, Volume  
2784 2, Part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
- 2785 Codex Standard 193-1995. Codex General Standard for Contaminants and Toxins in Food and Feed;  
2786 Adopted 1995; Revised 1997, 2006, 2008, 2009; Amended 2009, 2010, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016,  
2787 2017, 2018, 2019.
- 2788 Dessuy, M.B., Vale, M.G.R., Welz, B., Borges, A.R., Silva, M.M., Martelli, P.B. (2011). Determination of  
2789 cadmium and lead in beverages after leaching from pewter cups using graphite furnace atomic  
2790 absorption spectrometry. *Talanta*, 85 (1), p. 681-686.
- 2791 Directive (EU) 2020/2184 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 December 2020 on the  
2792 quality of water intended for human consumption. OJ L 435, 23.12.2020, p. 1.
- 2793 EFSA (2009). Scientific opinion of the Panel on Contaminants in the Food Chain (CONTAM) on a request  
2794 from the European Commission on cadmium in food. *EFSA Journal* 2009, 980, 1-139.. DOI:  
2795 10.2903/j.efsa.2009.980
- 2796 European Commission (2004). Directorate-General Health and Consumer Protection. Assessment of  
2797 the dietary exposure to arsenic, cadmium, lead and mercury of the population of EU Member States.  
2798 March 2004. Available at [https://ec.europa.eu/food/system/files/2016-  
2799 10/cs\\_contaminants\\_catalogue\\_scoop\\_3-2-11\\_heavy\\_metals\\_report\\_en.pdf](https://ec.europa.eu/food/system/files/2016-10/cs_contaminants_catalogue_scoop_3-2-11_heavy_metals_report_en.pdf)
- 2800 Friberg, L., Kjellström, T., Nordberg, G.F. (1986). Cadmium. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B.  
2801 Handbook on the toxicology of metals. Second Edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.
- 2802 JECFA (1993). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Forty-first report of the Joint  
2803 FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organization, Technical Report Series  
2804 837.
- 2805 JEFCA (2003). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants: sixty-first report of the Joint  
2806 FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. WHO technical report series; 922.
- 2807 JECFA (2010). Joint FAO/WHO expert committee on food additives. Seventy-third meeting.  
2808 JECFA/73/SC
- 2809 Lind, Y. (1997). Bioavailability of cadmium in food. Influence of cadmium binding components. *Acta*  
2810 *Univ. Ups.*, Comprehensive Summaries of Uppsala Dissertations from the Faculty of Science and  
2811 Technology 319. 45 pp. Uppsala ISBN 91-554-4066-5.
- 2812 Regulation (EC) No 1907/2006 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 18 December 2006  
2813 concerning the Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH),  
2814 establishing a European Chemicals Agency, amending Directive 1999/45/EC and repealing Council  
2815 Regulation (EEC) No 793/93 and Commission Regulation (EC) No 1488/94 as well as Council Directive

2816 76/769/EEC and Commission Directives 91/155/EEC, 93/67/EEC, 93/105/EC and 2000/21/EC. OJ L 396  
2817 30.12.2006, p. 1.

2818 WHO (1992). World Health Organization, IPCS INCHEM Environmental Health Criteria 135. Cadmium.  
2819 ISBN 92 4 157134 9. Available at <https://incchem.org/documents/ehc/ehc/ehc135.htm>

2820 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality. Fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
2821 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at  
2822 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

## 2823 **Lead (Pb)**

2824 Lead is found as a contaminant in air, water and soils. The Earth's crust contains about 15 mg/kg of  
2825 lead (Beliles, 1994). Lead is present in the environment in the form of metallic lead, inorganic ions and  
2826 salts and organo-metallic compounds. There are numerous sources of contamination including  
2827 accumulators, petrol, recycling of lead batteries and combustion of industrial and household waste.  
2828 Lead pollution is decreasing in most parts of the world, as lead-containing chemicals, such as tetraethyl  
2829 lead and tetramethyl lead that are used as gasoline additives to increase octane rating, are replaced  
2830 by other additives (ATSDR, 2020) and due to recycling of accumulators and batteries. Exposure  
2831 through drinking-water, where lead or lead soldered pipes are still used, may contribute significantly  
2832 to lead intake. The greatest single use of lead metal today is in batteries for automobiles (Beliles,  
2833 1994). Most of the lead in the environment is present as complex bound lead ions in solution or as  
2834 slightly soluble Pb(II) salts.

## 2835 **Sources and levels of intake**

2836 Lead in the soil is only poorly taken up by plant roots and is not transported away from the roots to  
2837 the rest of the plant. Therefore, lead levels in plants are, to a large extent, governed by air-borne lead  
2838 contamination, which makes leaves and leafy vegetables most vulnerable to air-borne deposition  
2839 (EFSA, 2010). Cereal grains have also been shown to absorb substantial amounts of lead via the air  
2840 (CCFAC, 1995). The main sources of lead intake are foodstuffs such as vegetables, cereals and cereal  
2841 products and drinking-water/materials in contact with drinking water (EFSA, 2010). Game and shellfish  
2842 may also contain rather high amounts of lead (EFSA, 2010).

2843 In Europe, lead dietary exposure ranges from 0.36 to 1.24 µg/kg body weight/day in average adult  
2844 consumers and up to 2.43 µg/kg body weight/day in high-end consumers. Exposure of infants ranges  
2845 from 0.21 to 0.94 µg/kg body weight/day and of children from 0.80 to 3.10 µg/kg body weight/day  
2846 (average consumers) and up to 5.51 µg/kg body weight/day (high consumers) (EFSA, 2010). ANSES  
2847 (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 0.20 µg/kg body weight/day in adults and 0.27 µg/kg body  
2848 weight/day in children.

2849 Additionally, dust and soil can be significant non-dietary sources in children (EFSA, 2010).

## 2850 **Metallic food contact materials**

2851 Canned foodstuffs previously contained markedly higher lead levels than fresh foodstuffs and this was  
2852 most evident in fruits (Tsuchiya, 1986). However, modern canning techniques without lead soldering  
2853 are now typically used (Tsuchiya, 1986), which has caused a decrease in lead intake from this source.  
2854 Metallic lead in food is likely to arise from the presence of lead from shot or partially-jacketed bullets  
2855 in game. Lead is also found in the lead solder used to repair equipment. Manufacturing equipment  
2856 and household utensils may contain parts made wholly or partly of lead, and such parts may release  
2857 lead if they come into contact with food. Lead pipes or lead solder used to repair equipment have also  
2858 caused contamination problems. The lead that may be found as a contaminant in pewter may also be  
2859 released. Tin is also liable to release lead due to its presence in the metal as an impurity; the standard  
2860 specification of Ingot tin (according to European Standard EN 610:1995) specifies a maximum  
2861 permissible lead content of 0.050% and the standard specification of tinfoil (according to European  
2862 Standard EN 10333:2005) specifies a maximum permissible lead content of 0.01%. The EU Packaging  
2863 Waste Directive (94/62/EC) limits the Pb content of tin cans to less than 100 ppm.

## 2864 **Other food contact materials**

2865 Previously, lead pigments were often used in ceramic glazes (Beliles, 1994). However, because lead  
2866 pigments are toxic, their use is now restricted. In the EU, lead release is now regulated by Directive  
2867 84/500/EEC that sets limits for the release of lead from materials and articles made of ceramics.  
2868 Imported products from some countries and handicrafts still need particular attention. White lead is  
2869 the most important lead pigment (Beliles, 1994). Also, crystal glass typically contains 24% lead.

## 2870 **Release**

2871 The information on release of lead from metallic food contact materials is limited. One study  
2872 investigated the release of lead from pewter cups. Using different beverages (e.g. wine, beer) and  
2873 simulants (e.g. vinegar, 3% acetic acid), the lead release ranged from < LOD (beer) to 1.1 mg/L (3%  
2874 acetic acid) after 24 h contact time (Dessuy et al., 2011). Further, a survey with teapots made out of  
2875 brass found lead release between 1.1 mg/L and 62 mg/L, using citric acid solution (1 g/L) as a simulant  
2876 and a contact time of 30 minutes (Bolle et al., 2011).

2877 A minor source of lead in food cans exists in the form of small impurity levels in the tin of the coating.  
2878 Most foodstuffs, those based on citric acid, will dissolve only a small amount of it. Only foodstuffs  
2879 based on malic acid and in cans without an internal lacquer will show a significant tendency to attack  
2880 the lead (Bird et al., 1986).

## 2881 **Safety aspects**

2882 – JECFA (1993) established a PTWI at 0.025 mg/kg body weight/week or 0.214 mg/day/person  
2883 (average body weight ~60 kg). This limit was confirmed by the JECFA in 2000. During their 73rd  
2884 meeting in 2010, the JECFA withdrew the PTWI, concluding that the PTWI could no longer be  
2885 considered protective of health (JECFA, 2010). In children, the level of 1.9 µg/kg body weight per day

2886 was associated with a decrease of 3 intelligence quotient (IQ) points, which is deemed by the  
2887 Committee to be of concern.

2888 – WHO (2017) established a provisional guideline value for lead in drinking-water of 0.01 mg/L, on the  
2889 basis of treatment performance and analytical achievability. As this is no longer a healthbased  
2890 guideline value, concentrations should be maintained as low as reasonably practical.

2891 – In the EU, the limit for lead in drinking-water has been set to 0.005 mg/L (Directive (EU) 2020/2184).  
2892 The parametric value of 0.005 mg/L shall be met, at the latest, by 12 January 2036. The parametric  
2893 value for lead until that date shall be 0.010 mg/L.

2894 – For the general population, exposure to lead occurs primarily via the oral route, with some  
2895 contribution through inhalation (EFSA, 2010). In adults, approximately 15-20% of the ingested lead is  
2896 absorbed in the gastrointestinal tract (EFSA, 2010). Children however seem to show a higher  
2897 absorption rates (EFSA, 2010). Lead has a half-life in the blood of about a month, whereas it may have  
2898 a half-life as long as 30 years in bones (EFSA, 2010). The toxicity of lead is based on its ability to bind  
2899 biologically important molecules and thus to interfere with their function (EFSA, 2010). The most  
2900 common form of acute lead poisoning is gastrointestinal colic (Beliles, 1994). Dietary lead exposure is  
2901 unlikely to represent a significant cancer risk (EFSA, 2010).

2902 – It should be noted that the most critical effect of lead on children has been identified as reduced  
2903 cognitive development and intellectual performance. There is no evidence of a threshold for this  
2904 effect. This issue was discussed in a JECFA paper on maximum levels for lead in fish (JECFA 2006).

2905 – In their 2008 statement, the COT considered that the JECFA PTWI could not be considered fully  
2906 protective for all age groups and that, since it is not possible to identify a threshold for the association  
2907 between lead exposure and decrements in intelligence quotient, efforts should continue to reduce  
2908 lead exposure from all sources (COT, 2008).

2909 – In 2010, the EFSA published an opinion on lead using a benchmark dose BMD approach (EFSA, 2010).  
2910 Developmental neurotoxicity in young children and cardiovascular effects and nephrotoxicity in adults  
2911 were identified as the relevant endpoints for lead. As a result, the EFSA found that neuro-development  
2912 effects at current exposure levels are a concern for infants, children and pregnant women.  
2913 Consequently, since no threshold of effects for the critical endpoints could be identified, the EFSA  
2914 concluded that the JECFA PTWI is no longer appropriate and that further efforts to derive a PTWI  
2915 would not be appropriate. The EFSA derived the following 3 benchmark dose lower confidence limits  
2916 (BMDL):

2917 – developmental neurotoxicity BMDL01: 0.50 µg/kg body weight/day

2918 – effects on systolic blood pressure BMDL01: 1.50 µg/kg body weight/day (90 µg/day)

2919 – effects on prevalence of chronic kidney disease BMDL10: 0.63 µg/kg body weight/day (38  
2920 µg/day).

## 2921 **Conclusions and recommendations**

2922 “the SRL for lead is set at 0.01 mg/kg”

2923 Since dietary intake of lead in certain populations exceeds levels where adverse health effects are  
2924 caused, its release from food contact materials made from metal and alloys into food should be  
2925 reduced as much as possible.

2926 In order to set an SRL for lead, it was decided to use the BMDL10 of 0.63 µg/kg body weight/day (38  
2927 µg/day) for chronic kidney disease. As lead is considered an impurity in the metallic material and  
2928 intake can be higher than the BMDL10, the allowance for lead release from food contact materials  
2929 and articles should not exceed 10% of the toxicological reference value. Therefore, assuming that a  
2930 person of 60 kg body weight consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared  
2931 with food contact materials made from metals and alloys, the calculated limit for lead would be at  
2932 0.004 mg/kg.

2933 However, it was decided to set the SRL at 0.01 mg/kg, which is consistent with the limit for lead in  
2934 drinking water, stated in Directive (EU) 2020/2184 to be applicable until January 2036. This equals an  
2935 allowance of 26% of the toxicological reference value.

2936 By derogation, the SRL does not apply to tinned steel sheet used as packaging for foodstuffs for  
2937 which a maximum level of lead is set in Regulation (EC) No 1881/2006, provided that the tin that is  
2938 used meets the following specification: Lead content: not more than 0.01%. Due to the restriction on  
2939 the maximum level of tin in food as set in the same regulation, the co-release of the lead impurity will  
2940 be restricted to an acceptable level.

## 2941 **References**

2942 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
2943 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

2944 ATSDR (2020). Toxicological profile for lead. US Department of Health and Human Services. Public  
2945 Health Service. Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry. Available at  
2946 <https://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/ToxProfiles/tp13.pdf>

2947 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology. Fourth Edition. Volume  
2948 2, part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

2949 Bird, D.W., English, T.H., Hill W.H. (1986). Influence of lead migration in tin coatings on trace metal  
2950 pick-up from tinfoil cans. Br. Corros. J., 1986, Vol. 21, No.1, p. 23-26.

2951 Bolle, F., Brian, W., Petit, D., Boutakhrit, K., Feraille, G., van Loco, J. (2011). Tea brewed in traditional  
2952 metallic teapots as a significant source of lead, nickel and other chemical elements. Food Additives  
2953 and Contaminants – Part A Chemistry, Analysis, Control, Exposure and Risk Assessment, 28 (9), p.  
2954 1287-1293.

2955 CCFAC (1995). Revised discussion paper on lead. Codex Committee on Food Additives and  
2956 Contaminants. CX/FAC 95/18 add. 2.

2957 COT (2008). COT Statement on the 2006 UK Total Diet Study of Metals and Other Elements. Available  
2958 at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/cot/cotstatementttds200808.pdf>

- 2959 Dessuy, M.B., Vale, M.G.R., Welz, B., Borges, A.R., Silva, M.M., Martelli, P.B. (2011). Determination of  
2960 cadmium and lead in beverages after leaching from pewter cups using graphite furnace atomic  
2961 absorption spectrometry. *Talanta*, 85 (1), p. 681-686.
- 2962 Directive 84/500/CEE of 15 October 1984 on the approximation of the laws of the Member States  
2963 relating to ceramic articles intended to come into contact with foodstuffs. OJ L 277, 20.10.1984, p. 12
- 2964 Directive 94/62/EC of 20 December 1994 on packaging and packaging waste. OJ L 365, 31/12/1994, p  
2965 10.
- 2966 Directive (EU) 2020/2184 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 16 December 2020 on the  
2967 quality of water intended for human consumption. OJ L 435, 23.12.2020, p. 1.
- 2968 EFSA (2010). EFSA Panel on Contaminants in the Food Chain (CONTAM); Scientific Opinion on Lead in  
2969 Food. *EFSA Journal* 2010; 8(4):1570. DOI:10.2903/j.efsa.2010.1570.
- 2970 JECFA (1993). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Forty-first report of the Joint  
2971 FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organization, Technical Report Series  
2972 837.
- 2973 JECFA (2000). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants: fifty-third report of the Joint  
2974 FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. WHO technical report series; 896.
- 2975 JECFA (2006). Discussion paper on lead, Thirty-eighth meeting of the Joint FAO/WHO Codex  
2976 Committee on Food Additives, 24-28. April, The Hague 2006.
- 2977 JECFA (2010). Joint FAO/WHO expert committee on food additives. Seventy-third meeting.  
2978 JECFA/73/SC.
- 2979 Regulation (EC) No 1881/2006 of 19 December 2006 setting maximum levels for certain contaminants  
2980 in foodstuffs. OJ L 364, 20.12.2006, p. 5.
- 2981 Tsuchiya, K. (1986). Lead. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. Handbook on the toxicology of  
2982 metals. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.
- 2983 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality. Fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
2984 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at  
2985 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

## 2986 **Lithium (Li)**

2987 Lithium is a soft, silvery-white metal which tarnishes and oxidises very quickly on contact with air and  
2988 water (Winter, 2007).

2989 Lithium is widely distributed across the globe, but it is not found in metallic form because of its high  
2990 reactivity (Beliles, 1994). It is mainly encountered as an impurity in the salts of other alkali metals.

2991 Lithium is the lightest solid element. It is mainly used in the manufacture of certain high-performance  
2992 alloys used in aeronautics. Lithium is the metal with the lowest molecular mass and also the lightest

2993 metal, with a density half that of water. In accordance with the Dulong-Petit law, it is the solid with  
2994 the highest specific heat (Winter, 2007).

2995 Lithium salts such as lithium carbonate, citrate and orotate are used as mood regulators for the  
2996 treatment of bipolar and sleep disorders (Winter, 2007).

## 2997 **Sources and levels of intake**

2998 Lithium is found in foodstuffs at concentrations ranging from 0.012-3.4 mg/kg. As the main  
2999 contributors grains and vegetables were identified (Schrauzer, 2002).

3000 Mean daily intake through food from multiple countries was estimated between 350 and 1500 µg/day  
3001 (Schrauzer, 2002). ANSES (2011) estimated mean daily intake at 48.2 µg/person/day in adults and 19.8  
3002 µg/person/day in children. Main contributors are water (35%), coffee and other hot beverages in  
3003 adults.

## 3004 **Metallic food contact materials**

3005 High-performance lithium-aluminium, -cadmium, -copper and -manganese alloys are used in the  
3006 manufacture of high-quality mechanical parts, although there is no evidence of such alloys coming  
3007 into contact with food.

## 3008 **Other food contact materials**

3009 Lithium is sometimes used in low thermal-expansion glasses and ceramics. Release from plastic food  
3010 contact materials is regulated (Regulation (EU) No. 10/2011; SML 0.6 mg/kg).

## 3011 **Release**

3012 No information available.

## 3013 **Safety aspects**

3014 – RIVM (1991) derived a TDI of 0.008 mg/kg body weight/day (0.48 mg/day). This limit was derived  
3015 from 90-day oral rat studies, mutagenicity data, and therapeutic uses of Li salts.

## 3016 **Conclusions and recommendations**

3017 “the SRL for lithium is set at 0.048 mg/kg”

3018 Based on the limited information available, the SRL was derived from the TDI of 0.008 mg/kg body  
3019 weight/day (0.48 mg/day) established by the RIVM (1991). As lithium is considered an impurity in the  
3020 metallic material, it was concluded that an allowance of 10% of the toxicological reference value was  
3021 reasonable. Therefore, assuming that a person of 60 kg body weight consumes 1 kg of foodstuffs per  
3022 day that is packaged and/or prepared with food contact materials made from metals and alloys, the  
3023 SRL for lithium is set at 0.048 mg/kg.

## 3024 **References**

3025 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
3026 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxins and phytoestrogens.

3027 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, Fourth edition, Volume  
3028 2, Part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

3029 Regulation (EU) No 10/2011 of 14 January 2011 on plastic materials and articles intended to come into  
3030 contact with food. OJ L 12, 15.1.2011, p. 1.

3031 RIVM (1991). Summary based on the report RIVM Nr. 105/76 Tox, prepared for EEC SC-Food Working  
3032 Group Packaging Materials, Sept. 1991.

3033 Schrauzer, G.N. (2002). Lithium: Occurrence, dietary intakes, nutritional essentiality. Journal of the  
3034 American College of Nutrition, 21 (1), p. 14-21.

3035 Winter, M.J. (2007) Chemistry: Periodic Table: lithium: historical information. Available at  
3036 <https://www.webelements.com/lithium/history.html>, accessed 20 September 2021.

## 3037 **Mercury (Hg)**

3038 Mercury is among the metals of most concern for human health, especially organic mercury. Mercury  
3039 in ambient air originates mainly from volcanic and industrial activity (Codex Standard 193-1995).  
3040 About 100 tonnes of mercury are released into the global atmosphere each year by the burning of  
3041 fossil fuels, melting of sulfide ores, cement manufacture and the heating of other materials containing  
3042 mercury (Florence and Batley, 1980). Methyl mercury is biosynthesised from inorganic mercury as a  
3043 consequence of microbial activity (ATSDR, 1999). Methyl mercury is found in foodstuffs and, in  
3044 particular, in fish and seafood. Much has been done in the last decade to eliminate or reduce mercury  
3045 contamination of foodstuffs.

## 3046 **Sources and levels of intake**

3047 Mercury is found in concentrations ranging from 0.005-0.05 mg/kg in foodstuffs. The main contributor  
3048 is methyl mercury in fish, which contains between 2 and 4 mg/kg. The average level of mercury in fish  
3049 is 0-0.08 mg/kg (National Food Agency of Denmark, 1995). The major source of mercury from fish is  
3050 methyl mercury (Beliles, 1994; Berlin, 1986). In Regulation (EC) No. 1881/2006, maximum levels for  
3051 mercury in fish and food supplements have been specified.

3052 The European Commission, DG-SANCO (2004), estimated a mean dietary intake of mercury among 13  
3053 European states equal to 0.006 mg/day (0.1 µg/kg body weight/day). In the British total diet study  
3054 (2014), total mercury was measured (sum of inorganic mercury and methylmercury) and mercury was  
3055 detected at low levels or below the LOD. The highest concentration was 0.0497 mg/kg measured in  
3056 the fish group (FSA, 2014).

3057 ANSES (2011) estimated the mean daily intake of inorganic mercury between 0.006 and 0.18 µg/kg  
3058 body weight/day in adults and between 0.014 and 0.26 µg/kg body weight/day in children (according

3059 to lower bound or upper bound concentrations). Mean daily intake of organic mercury via fish and  
3060 seafood products were estimated at 0.017µg/kg body weight/day in adults and 0.022 µg/kg body  
3061 weight/day in children.

3062 Other sources of mercury may be the chloro-alkali industry, the electrical industry, manufacture of  
3063 paints, instruments, agrochemicals and other specialist items.

3064 Mercury has a propensity to form alloys (amalgams) with almost all other metals, except iron (Beliles,  
3065 1994). Dental amalgam contains tin and silver (and sometimes gold) dissolved in mercury (Beliles,  
3066 1994).

3067 The safety of the use of dental amalgam and its substitutes is subject to specific risk assessment by  
3068 the Scientific Committee on Emerging and Newly Identified Health Risks (SCENIHR). The use of dental  
3069 amalgam has been banned in Denmark, Norway and Sweden and has also been discouraged in other  
3070 EU countries (Norwegian Ministry of the Environment, 2007; Swedish Ministry of the Environment,  
3071 2009; European Commission, 2008).

## 3072 **Metallic food contact materials**

3073 Due to its physico-chemical properties and, in particular its known toxicity, mercury is not used in food  
3074 contact materials.

## 3075 **Release**

3076 No information is available.

## 3077 **Safety aspects**

3078 – JECFA (1978; 1988) established a PTWI of 0.005 mg/kg body weight/week for mercury, but with a  
3079 maximum of 0.0033 mg/kg body weight/week for methyl mercury. However, it was stated that this  
3080 PTWI might not adequately protect fetuses. In 2010, a new PTWI of 0.004 mg/kg body weight/week  
3081 for inorganic mercury in foods other than fish and shellfish was established (JECFA, 2010). The  
3082 previous PTWI for total mercury was withdrawn. The new PTWI of 0.004 mg/kg body weight/week  
3083 was based on the benchmark dose lower limit (BMDL10 of 0.06 mg/kg body weight/day) for a 10%  
3084 increase in relative kidney weight in male rats, the application of an uncertainty factor of 100 and  
3085 extrapolation to a weekly limit.

3086 – In line with JECFA 2010, the CONTAM Panel of EFSA established a tolerable weekly intake (TWI) for  
3087 inorganic mercury of 4 µg/kg b.w., expressed as mercury (EFSA, 2012).

3088 – WHO (2017) established a guideline value for inorganic mercury in drinking-water of 0.006 mg/L.

3089 – Mercury, in its metallic form, is unlikely to cause poisoning by ingestion, whereas the vapour is toxic.  
3090 Methyl mercury is the most toxic form of organic mercury (Codex Standard 193-1995). The oral  
3091 absorption of elemental mercury is limited and may be approximately 0.1% (Beliles, 1994). Some  
3092 inorganic mercury salts and organic mercury compounds may be more readily absorbed, e.g. methyl  
3093 mercury which is absorbed completely (Beliles, 1994). The toxic properties of mercury vapour are due

3094 to mercury accumulation in the brain, causing an unspecific psychoasthenic and vegetative  
3095 neurological syndrome (micromercurialism) (Berlin, 1986). At high exposure levels, mercurial tremor  
3096 is seen, accompanied by severe behavioural and personality changes, increased excitability, loss of  
3097 memory and insomnia (Berlin, 1986). Low concentrations of methyl mercury cause cell death and  
3098 inhibition of cell proliferation in cell cultures, whereas mercury chloride primarily disrupts the plasma  
3099 membrane (Braeckman et al., 1997). Methyl mercury is listed as one of the six most dangerous  
3100 chemicals in the environment. Inorganic mercury is classified as a carcinogen. However, there is a lack  
3101 of data on risks to humans (Beliles, 1994). Mercury and silver interferes with copper distribution. The  
3102 general population is exposed to methyl mercury primarily through their diet (organic mercury) and  
3103 dental amalgam “fillings” (inorganic mercury) (ATSDR, 1999).

3104 – An IPCS Working Group (WHO, 2003) recommended a TDI of 0.002 mg/kg body weight/day for  
3105 inorganic Hg based on the NOAEL of 0.23 mg/kg body weight/day for kidney effects from a 26-week  
3106 study in rats (NTP, 1993) and applying an uncertainty factor of 100 (for inter-species and intra-species  
3107 variation) after adjusting for dosages 5 days/week. A similar TDI was obtained by applying an  
3108 uncertainty factor of 1,000 (an additional uncertainty factor of 10 for adjustment from a LOAEL to a  
3109 NOAEL) to the LOAEL for renal effects of 1.9 mg/kg body weight/day from a 2-year study in rats (NTP,  
3110 1993).

## 3111 **Conclusions and recommendations**

3112 “the SRL for mercury is set at 0.003 mg/kg”

3113 Mercury is one of the most dangerous metals for human health.

3114 The SRL was derived from the JECFA (2010) and EFSA (2012) assessments. Using the TWI of 0.004  
3115 mg/kg body weight/week as a starting point resulted in a TDI of 0.0006 mg/kg body weight/day (0.03  
3116 mg/day). As mercury is considered an impurity in the metallic material, the P-SC-EMB concluded that  
3117 an allowance of 10% of the toxicological reference value was reasonable. Therefore, assuming that a  
3118 person of 60 kg body weight consumes 1 kg per of foodstuffs day that is packaged and/or prepared  
3119 with food contact materials made from metals and alloys, the SRL for mercury is set at 0.003 mg/kg.

## 3120 **References**

3121 ANSES (2011). Second French Total Diet Study (TDS 2), Report 1: inorganic contaminants, minerals,  
3122 persistent organic pollutants, mycotoxin.

3123 ATSDR (1999). Toxicological profile for mercury. US Department of Health and Human Services. Public  
3124 Health Service. Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry. Available at  
3125 <https://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/ToxProfiles/tp46.pdf>

3126 Beliles, R.P. (1994). The metals. In: Patty’s Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology, Fourth edition, Volume  
3127 2, Part C. Edited by Clayton, G.D., and Clayton, F.E. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

3128 Berlin, M. (1986). Mercury. In: Friberg, L., Nordberg, G.F., Vouk, V.B. Handbook on the toxicology of  
3129 metals. Second edition. Elsevier, Amsterdam, New York, Oxford.

- 3130 Braeckman, B., Raes, H., Van Hoye, D. (1997). Heavy-metal toxicity in an insect cell line. Effects of  
3131 cadmium chloride, mercuric chloride and methylmercuric chloride on cell viability and proliferation in  
3132 *Aedes albopictus* cells. *Cell Biology and Toxicology*, 13 p. 389-397.
- 3133 Codex Standard 193-1995. Codex General Standard for Contaminants and Toxins in Food and Feed;  
3134 Adopted 1995; Revised 1997, 2006, 2008, 2009; Amended 2009, 2010, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016,  
3135 2017, 2018, 2019.
- 3136 Commission Regulation (EC) No. 1881/2006 setting maximum levels for certain contaminants in  
3137 foodstuffs.
- 3138 EFSA (2012) Panel on Contaminants in the Food Chain (CONTAM); Scientific Opinion on the risk for  
3139 public health related to the presence of mercury and methylmercury in food. *EFSA Journal*  
3140 2012;10(12):2985. [241 pp.] DOI:10.2903/j.efsa.2012.2985.
- 3141 European Commission (2008). Directorate-General Environment. Options for reducing mercury use in  
3142 products and applications, and the fate of mercury already circulating in society. Available at  
3143 [http://ec.europa.eu/environment/chemicals/mercury/pdf/study\\_report2008.pdf](http://ec.europa.eu/environment/chemicals/mercury/pdf/study_report2008.pdf)
- 3144 European Commission (2004). Directorate-General Health and Consumer Protection. Assessment of  
3145 the dietary exposure to arsenic, cadmium, lead and mercury of the population of EU Member States.  
3146 March 2004. Available at [https://ec.europa.eu/food/system/files/2016-](https://ec.europa.eu/food/system/files/2016-10/cs_contaminants_catalogue_scoop_3-2-11_heavy_metals_report_en.pdf)  
3147 [10/cs\\_contaminants\\_catalogue\\_scoop\\_3-2-11\\_heavy\\_metals\\_report\\_en.pdf](https://ec.europa.eu/food/system/files/2016-10/cs_contaminants_catalogue_scoop_3-2-11_heavy_metals_report_en.pdf)
- 3148 Florence, T.M., Batley, G.E. (1980). Chemical speciation in natural waters. *CRC Critical Reviews in*  
3149 *Analytical Chemistry*. p. 219-296.
- 3150 FSA (2014). Measurement of the concentrations of metals and other elements from the 2014 UK total  
3151 diet study. Available at [https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)  
3152 [metals-and-other-elements](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)
- 3153 JECFA (1978). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Twenty-second report of the  
3154 Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organization, Technical Report  
3155 Series 631.
- 3156 JECFA (1988). Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Thirty-third report of the Joint  
3157 FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. World Health Organization, Technical Report Series  
3158 776.
- 3159 JECFA (2010) Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives Seventy-second meeting (Rome,  
3160 16-25 February 2010) – Summary and conclusions. World Health Organization, Geneva.
- 3161 National Food Agency of Denmark (1995). Food monitoring 1988-1992.
- 3162 Norway Ministry of the Environment (2007). Bans mercury in products. Press Release, 21.12.2007.  
3163 Available at <https://www.regjeringen.no/en/aktuelt/Bans-mercury-in-products/id495138/>, accessed  
3164 20 September 2021

3165 NTP (1993) Toxicology and carcinogenesis studies of mercuric chloride in F344/N rats and B6C3F1 mice  
3166 (gavage studies). National Institutes of Health, National Toxicology Program (NTP TR 408; NIH  
3167 Publication No. 91-3139).

3168 Regulation (EC) No 1881/2006 of 19 December 2006 setting maximum levels for certain contaminants  
3169 in foodstuffs. OJ L 364, 20.12.2006, p. 5.

3170 Scientific Committee on Emerging and Newly Identified Health Risks (SCENIHR). Available at  
3171 [https://ec.europa.eu/health/scientific\\_committees/emerging/opinions\\_en](https://ec.europa.eu/health/scientific_committees/emerging/opinions_en), accessed 20 September  
3172 2021.

3173 Swedish Ministry of the Environment (2009). Since 2009 Sweden has had a general ban on placing  
3174 mercury and articles containing mercury on the Swedish market in order to minimise the emissions to  
3175 the environment.

3176 WHO (2003). World Health Organization, IPCS INCHEM Concise International Chemical Assessment  
3177 Document 50. Elemental Mercury and Inorganic Mercury Compounds: Human Health Aspects. ISBN  
3178 92 4 153050 2. Available at <https://inchem.org/documents/cicads/cicads/cicad50.htm>

3179 WHO (2017): Guidelines for drinking-water quality: fourth edition incorporating the first addendum.  
3180 ISBN: 978-92-4-154995-0. Available at  
3181 <http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/254637/1/9789241549950-eng.pdf>

## 3182 **Thallium (Tl)**

3183 The Earth's crust comprises some 0.7% of thallium (USGS, 2010). Thallium is found in zinc, copper, iron  
3184 and lead ores (Peter and Viraraghavan, 2005). Only very rare minerals (lorandite, crookesite, etc.)  
3185 contain thallium (Shaw, 1952). Pyrite ash used to manufacture cement may contain considerable  
3186 quantities of thallium (Peter and Viraraghavan, 2005).

### 3187 **Sources and levels of intake**

3188 According to currently available data, the risk of excessive public exposure to Tl is low. To date, only a  
3189 few studies investigating the human health risks associated with dust deposits from certain industries  
3190 (e.g. cement works) have been conducted (Brockhaus et al., 1981). Thallium can be found in  
3191 vegetables, potatoes and fish at concentrations around 0.001 mg/kg (FSA, 2014).

3192 Dietary intake was estimated at < 5 µg/day (Sherlock, 1986). In the 2014 British total diet study the  
3193 highest total mean and 97.5th percentile exposures were in the 1.5 to 3 years age group and were  
3194 0.021 – 0.22 µg/kg bw/day and 0.073 – 0.36 µg/kg bw/day (FSA, 2014).

### 3195 **Metallic food contact materials**

3196 This highly toxic metal can be found as an impurity in alloys. The French Decree of 27/8/1987 lays  
3197 down a maximal quantity of thallium in aluminium of 0.05%. Furthermore, the addition of thallium to  
3198 certain metals apparently increases their resistance to deformation and corrosion. However, there is

3199 no evidence of any thallium use in a food-related context, although neither has its absence (as a  
3200 component or impurity) from metals or alloys been demonstrated.

## 3201 **Other food contact materials**

3202 No information available.

## 3203 **Release**

3204 No information available.

## 3205 **Safety aspects**

3206 – In humans, gastroenteritis, polyneuropathy and alopecia are the classical symptoms of poisoning.  
3207 Most assessments are based on a sub-chronic 90-days-study on rats (MRI 1988) identifying alopecia  
3208 as most critical endpoint. The authors of this study derived a NOAEL of 0.2 mg/kg body weight from  
3209 the highest concentration applied.

3210 – EPA (2009) based their evaluation on the above mentioned study, but considered the highest dose  
3211 of thallium applied (0.2 mg/kg bw./day) as LOAEL due to hair follicle atrophy and identified the second  
3212 highest dose as NOAEL (0.04 mg/kg bw./day). Due to uncertainties in the study, EPA chose not to  
3213 derive an RfD.

3214 – In a 2008 COT statement, no health-based guidance values for thallium were expressed, but the  
3215 current UK dietary exposures were considered unlikely to be of toxicological concern (COT, 2008). COT  
3216 considered in its assessment the statement of the WHO (1996).

3217 – The WHO (1996) considered that exposures resulting in urinary thallium levels of 5 µg/L are unlikely  
3218 to cause adverse health effects. This level corresponds to an oral intake of 10 µg/day of thallium in a  
3219 soluble form (0.17 µg/kg body weight/day for a 60 kg adult). WHO concluded that due to the  
3220 uncertainties relating to thallium toxicity, it could not derive a health based exposure limit.  
3221 Furthermore, in the absence of better dose-response relationship data, it would seem prudent to  
3222 ensure that intakes should be below 10 µg/day.

3223 – Germany's environmental protection agency – Umweltbundesamt – derived a HBM-I value of 5 µg/L  
3224 urine (UBA 2011) based on an epidemiological study (Brockhaus et al., 1981). The HBM-I-value  
3225 represents the concentration of a substance in human biological material below which – according to  
3226 the knowledge and judgement of the HBM Commission – there is no risk for adverse health effects  
3227 and, consequently, no need for action. This was done by correlating the thallium exposure and the  
3228 prevalence of certain symptoms known to be associated with chronic thallium intoxication. This urine  
3229 concentration corresponded to an oral exposure of 10 µg/person/day (adult of 60 kg body weight).

3230 – The Netherland's RIVM evaluated toxicological data available for thallium in 1998. No  
3231 carcinogenicity studies had been carried out and the genotoxic potential was examined to a limited  
3232 extent only. The results of studies on reproductive toxicity indicate that thallium compounds adversely  
3233 affect the male reproductive system. Due to limitations in the data set, only a provisional TDI (PDTI)  
3234 could be derived for thallium and its compounds (0.2 µg/kg body weight) (RIVM, 1998).

## 3235 Conclusions and recommendations

3236 “the SRL for thallium is set at 0.001 mg/kg”

3237 The acceptable oral exposure of 10 µg/person/day (UBA 2011) derived by WHO (1996), UBA (2011)  
3238 and the PTDI by RIVM are of the same order of magnitude. Therefore, it is recommended to derive  
3239 the SRL based on these data. As thallium is considered an impurity in the metallic material, an  
3240 allowance of 10% of the toxicological reference value is applicable. Assuming that a person consumes  
3241 1 kg of foodstuffs per day that is packaged and/or prepared with food contact materials made from  
3242 metals and alloys, the SRL for thallium is set at 0.001 mg/kg.

## 3243 References

3244 Brockhaus, A., Dolgner, R., Ewers, U., Krämer, U., Soddemann, H., Wiegand, H. (1981) Intake and  
3245 health effects of thallium among a population living in the vicinity of a cement plant emitting thallium  
3246 containing dust. International Archives of Occupational and Environmental Health, 48 (4), pp. 375-  
3247 389.

3248 COT (2008). COT Statement on the 2006 UK Total Diet Study of Metals and Other Elements. Available  
3249 at <https://cot.food.gov.uk/sites/default/files/cot/cotstatementttds200808.pdf>

3250 EPA (2009). Thallium (I) soluble salts; CASRN various. Available at  
3251 [https://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/iris2/chemicalLanding.cfm?substance\\_nmbr=1012](https://cfpub.epa.gov/ncea/iris2/chemicalLanding.cfm?substance_nmbr=1012)

3252 French decree of 27 August 1987 relatif aux matériaux et objets en aluminium ou en alliages  
3253 d'aluminium au contact des denrées, produits et boissons alimentaires (Journal officiel du 27  
3254 septembre 1987). Available (in French) at  
3255 <https://www.legifrance.gouv.fr/loda/id/LEGITEXT000006057729/>

3256 FSA (2014). Measurement of the concentrations of metals and other elements from the 2014 UK total  
3257 diet study. Available at [https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)  
3258 [metals-and-other-elements](https://www.food.gov.uk/research/research-projects/total-diet-study-metals-and-other-elements)

3259 MRI (1988). Stoltz, M.L., M.A. Stedham, L.K. Brown, and others. 1986. Subchronic (90-day) Toxicity of  
3260 Thallium (I) Sulfate (CASNo.7446-18-6) in Sprague-Dawley Rats. Kansas City, MO: Midwest Research  
3261 Institute.

3262 Peter AL, Viraraghavan T. Thallium: a review of public health and environmental concerns. Environ Int.  
3263 2005 May;31(4):493-501. doi: 10.1016/j.envint.2004.09.003

3264 RIVM 1998. Maximum permissible risk levels for human intake of soil contaminants: Fourth series of  
3265 compounds. Report 711701 004 to Directorate-General for Environmental Protection, Directorate for  
3266 Soil. National Institute of Public Health and the Environment. Bilthoven: The Netherlands. March 1998.  
3267 Available online at: <https://www.rivm.nl/bibliotheek/rapporten/711701004.pdf>

3268 Shaw, Denis M. (1952) The geochemistry of thallium, Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, 2 (2), pp.  
3269 118-154.

3270 Sherlock, J.C., Smart, G.A. (1986). Thallium in foods and the diet. Food Additives and Contaminants, 3:  
3271 pp. 363-370.

3272 UBA (2011). Stoffmonographie Thallium – Referenz- und Human-Biomonitoring-(HBM)-Werte für  
3273 Thallium im Urin. Bundesgesundheitsbl. (2011) 54:516–524, DOI 10.1007/s00103-011-1252-y.  
3274 <https://link.springer.com/content/pdf/10.1007/s00103-011-1252-y.pdf>

3275 USGS (2010). Thallium. Statistics and Information. US Geological Survey.

3276 WHO (1996). World Health Organization, IPCS INCHEM Environmental Health Criteria, 182. Thallium.  
3277 ISBN 92 4 157182 9. Available at <http://www.inchem.org/documents/ehc/ehc/ehc182.htm>

## 3278 **Stainless steel and other alloys**

### 3279 **Alloys**

3280 An alloy is a metallic material composed of two or more elements. Alloys are homogeneous at a  
3281 macroscopic scale and their components cannot be separated by mechanical means. Alloying  
3282 elements are incorporated into the metallic matrix to form a new metallurgical structure that  
3283 enhances specific properties of the metal (e.g. tensile strength, corrosion resistance, electrical or  
3284 thermal conductivity). The metallurgical structure depends on the alloy composition, but also on the  
3285 different thermal and mechanical processes applied during production of the material.

### 3286 **Main types of alloys**

3287 Most metals are mainly used in alloy form. The following alloys are amongst those most commonly  
3288 used for food contact applications:

3289 — Steel is an alloy made of iron and carbon (less than 2% carbon). Other elements (e.g. nickel,  
3290 chromium and/or molybdenum) may be alloyed with iron and carbon to provide desired properties.

3291 — Cast iron is an iron alloy containing 2 to 4% carbon and small amounts of manganese, silicon and  
3292 phosphorus.

3293 — Stainless steels are iron-chromium alloys which contain a minimum of 10.5% chromium (usually  
3294 17-18%) and less than 1.2% carbon (Heubner, 2009), and which are often also alloyed with elements  
3295 such as nickel, molybdenum, etc., to provide desired properties (see chapter 2 on stainless steels).  
3296 Increasing levels of chromium beyond 10.5% further improves corrosion resistance.

3297 — Aluminium alloys for food contact materials may contain alloying elements such as magnesium,  
3298 silicon, iron, manganese, copper and zinc (European Standard EN 601; European Standard EN 602).

3299 — Bronze consists of 80-95% copper and 5-20% tin.

3300 — Brass consists of 60-70% copper and 30-40% zinc.

3301 — German silver (also known as nickel silver and Maillechort) is a range of copper-based alloys with  
3302 the nickel content ranging from 10-20%. Maillechort has chemical composition of 60-64% copper, 17-  
3303 19% nickel and the remainder zinc, which is specified in EN 1652 and has the designation CW 409J.

3304 — Nickel bronze (also known as Dairy bronze and Thai bronze) is an alloy consisting of 63-67% Cu, 3.5-  
3305 4.5 % Sn, 3-5% Pb, 3-9% Zn, 1.5% Fe, 19-21.5% Ni, 1% Mn, and 0.15% Si.

3306 — Pewter alloy is made up of tin, antimony and copper in the following percentages: tin 91-95%,  
3307 antimony 2.5-8%, copper 0.05-2.5%.

3308 — Other alloys are used in small quantities, for example nickel-copper, and non-stick Al-Cu-Fe-Cr  
3309 quasi-crystal- coatings.

3310 The composition of an alloy is usually presented as a concentration range for each individual element.  
3311 This is because national and international standards specify permissible concentration ranges. Within  
3312 the ranges given in these standards, the properties of the alloy will be the same. Besides the principal  
3313 alloying elements that define the alloy type, other “minor” alloying elements can be added to enhance  
3314 a specific property of the material (e.g. the addition of 1-6% Pb in brass to improve the machinability  
3315 of the material). Alloys may also contain metallic impurities from raw materials and production  
3316 processes. Maximum permissible impurity concentrations are set in the alloy specification and are  
3317 generally less than 0.5%, depending on the alloy type.

## 3318 **Release**

3319 Measurable amounts of metallic elements in the alloy may be released into foodstuffs during food  
3320 preparation and cooking, leading to human ingestion. Studies on a variety of metallic food contact  
3321 materials have been conducted to assess whether such releases could impair food quality and/or are  
3322 a cause of concern for human health (Flint and Packirisamy, (1995); Flint and Packirisamy, 1997);  
3323 Vrochte et al., 1991).

3324 In one such study, release tests were carried out on coffee-pots (mocha-type pots) with different  
3325 compositions of aluminium alloys. The coffee pots consisted of alloys containing 0.09-0.77% zinc, 0.19-  
3326 5.5% copper, 0.02-0.5% lead, as well as other metallic elements. The release of copper, zinc and lead  
3327 was determined. The results showed that increasing amounts of copper in the starting alloy did not  
3328 correspond to increased copper release. Also, repeated use gave irregular, but decreasing, release of  
3329 all the tested metals (Gramiccioni et al., 1996).

## 3330 **Safety aspects**

3331 — When assessing the risk of the use of one or more substances incorporated into a special  
3332 preparation (for instance alloys), the way the constituent substances are bonded in the chemical  
3333 matrix shall be taken into account (Regulation (EC) No. 1907/2006).

3334 — There are no specific toxicological evaluations for the individual alloys used for direct food contact  
3335 and, therefore, any safety assessment is usually based on the information available for individual  
3336 elements.

3337 — The constituent elements of an alloy are released from the alloy as individual elements.

3338 — There is usually less release of elements from alloys than from unalloyed metals due to the  
3339 microstructure and surface properties of the alloys. The constituents of alloys are bound together in  
3340 a chemical matrix, essentially forming solid solutions and new compounds.

## 3341 **Conclusions and recommendations**

3342 — Any metallic element released from an alloy should comply with the corresponding specific release  
3343 limit (SRL, chapter 1).

3344 — In the absence of a specific safety evaluation of an alloy, the safety of any released amounts of the  
3345 individual elements should be evaluated.

3346 — Cadmium must not be added intentionally.

## 3347 **References**

3348 EN 601:2004, Aluminium and aluminium alloys – Castings – Chemical composition of castings for use  
3349 in contact with food.

3350 EN 602:2004, Aluminium and aluminium alloys – Wrought products - Chemical composition of semi  
3351 products used for the fabrication of articles for use in contact with food.

3352 EN 1652:1997, Copper and copper alloys – Plates, sheet, strip and circles for general purposes.

3353 Flint, G.N., Packirisamy, S. (1995). Systemic nickel: the contribution made by stainless-steel cooking  
3354 utensils. Contact Dermatitis. 32 p. 218-224.

3355 Flint, G.N., Packirisamy, S. (1997). Purity of food cooked in stainless steel utensils. Food Additives and  
3356 Contaminants. 14(2), p. 115-126.

3357 Gramiccioni, L., Beccaloni, E., Ciaralli, L. et al. (1996) Study on the potential migration of metals for the  
3358 coffee-makers in alloys based on Al. Aluminium Magazine 9 (10), pp. 14-19.

3359 Heubner, U. (2009). Stainless Steel – When Health Comes First, Environment and Human Health Series,  
3360 Euro Inox -2009 Volume 2, page 3, 2009. ISBN 978-2-87997-307-4 Available at  
3361 [http://www.worldstainless.org/Files/issf/non-image-](http://www.worldstainless.org/Files/issf/non-image-files/PDF/Euro_Inox/WhenHealthComesFirst_EN.pdf)  
3362 [files/PDF/Euro\\_Inox/WhenHealthComesFirst\\_EN.pdf](http://www.worldstainless.org/Files/issf/non-image-files/PDF/Euro_Inox/WhenHealthComesFirst_EN.pdf)

3363 Regulation (EC) No 1907/2006 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 18 December 2006  
3364 concerning the Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH),  
3365 establishing a European Chemicals Agency, amending Directive 1999/45/EC and repealing Council  
3366 Regulation (EEC) No 793/93 and Commission Regulation (EC) No 1488/94 as well as Council Directive  
3367 76/769/EEC and Commission Directives 91/155/EEC, 93/67/EEC, 93/105/EC and 2000/21/EC. OJ L 396,  
3368 30.12.2006, p. 1

3369 Vrochte, H. et al. (1991). Untersuchungen zur Frage der Nickelfreisetzung aus Edelstahlkochtöpfen. Z  
3370 Ernährungswiss 30:181-191.

## 3371 **Stainless steels**

3372 Stainless steels are widely used in food contact applications due to their resistance to corrosion under  
3373 conditions that would corrode or lead to rusting of iron or “non-stainless” steels, their durability, their  
3374 ability to be readily cleaned and sterilised without deterioration.

3375 They impart neither colour nor flavour to foodstuffs and beverages.

3376 Corrosion resistance in stainless steels results from a very thin, naturally formed protective surface  
3377 layer often called a passive film, which is formed when the chromium content of the steel exceeds  
3378 10.5%. Increasing the chromium content from a minimum of 10.5% to 17 or 20% also increases the  
3379 stability of the passive film. This film, only a few nanometers thick (Olsson and Landolt, 2003), forms  
3380 almost instantaneously on contact with the oxygen in air or water. Abrasion or other forms of surface  
3381 damage do not easily lead to film breakdown and, if damaged, the film rapidly reforms. Nickel  
3382 promotes repassivation and molybdenum is very effective in stabilising the film in the presence of  
3383 chlorides. Hence, these two alloying elements are used in many of the stainless steels used in food  
3384 contact applications.

## 3385 **Main types of stainless steel**

3386 Stainless steels vary in composition, but always contain a high percentage of chromium (a minimum  
3387 of 10.5%). The majority of stainless steels used in food contact applications contain 16-18% of  
3388 chromium (except martensitic stainless steel for cutlery and knife blades), as this has been found to  
3389 be the optimum chromium concentration for corrosion resistance in a wide range of food and  
3390 beverages.

3391 Stainless steels may be sub-divided into families according to their metallurgical structure. European  
3392 Standard EN 10088 series specifies the chemical composition of stainless steels; some of which are  
3393 commonly used for food contact applications:

3394 — Martensitic stainless steels: 11.5-19% chromium, with low (0-2%) or medium (4-7%) nickel. They  
3395 may contain molybdenum (up to 2.8%) and vanadium (up to 0.2%). Sub-families with varying amounts  
3396 of carbon, with or without molybdenum, are used for particular applications. Some typical  
3397 compositions and applications are:

3398 — 13% chromium, 0.2% carbon, no nickel or molybdenum, used for medium-price cutlery.

3399 — 13% chromium, 0.4% carbon, plus molybdenum, no nickel, used for high quality cutlery.

3400 — 14-15% chromium, >0.4% carbon, 0.5-0.8% molybdenum, 0.1-0.2% vanadium, no nickel, used for  
3401 professional cooks' knives.

3402 — Ferritic stainless steels: minimum 10.5-30% chromium and maximum 1% nickel. Some grades may  
3403 contain up to 4% molybdenum, and aluminium may be used as an alloying element. 16-21% chromium  
3404 is used in cutlery, hollowware, table surfaces, panels and worktops.

3405 — Austenitic stainless steels: for food contact applications, typically contain a minimum of 16%  
3406 chromium and 6% nickel. Austenitic grades (mainly the so called 300 series stainless steels) with  
3407 varying amounts of chromium and nickel, sometimes with other elements (e.g. molybdenum, copper),  
3408 are used in a very wide range of food contact applications: both domestic and industrial cutlery,  
3409 hollowware and kitchen utensils typically having 18% chromium and 8-10% nickel; higher alloy grades  
3410 used for food processing, storage and transport equipment, pipe-work, etc., having 17% chromium,  
3411 11% nickel and 2% molybdenum). Grades containing molybdenum (approximately 2-3%) are  
3412 particularly resistant to the corrosion caused by salt-containing foods (Eric Partington 2006).

3413 Recent years have seen an increasing use of the so-called 200 series stainless steels, where manganese  
3414 (up to 8%) is substituted for nickel, for food contact applications. These grades also contain nitrogen  
3415 and copper to further stabilise the austenitic structure of the steel and which, respectively, provide  
3416 additional strength and improved cold forming properties. However, although the 200 series are  
3417 austenitic stainless steels, their corrosion resistance is generally not equal to that of the 300 series  
3418 stainless steels. According to EN ISO 8442-1 austenitic stainless steels for cutlery are divided into two  
3419 groups:

3420 — CrNi – minimum 17% Cr, 8% Ni (300 series)

3421 — CrMn – minimum 17% Cr, 4% Ni, 7.5% Mn (200 series)

3422 Super-austenitic grades (typically containing 20-25% chromium, 20-25% nickel, 4.5-6.5% molybdenum  
3423 and sometimes with copper additions) are used in contact with food containing very high levels of salt  
3424 (e.g. soy sauce; 17% chloride) and also for steam-heating systems, boilers, brines, etc.

3425 — Austeno-ferritic steels, also known as Duplex steels, contain 21-28% chromium, 0-4.5%  
3426 molybdenum, 1.35-8% nickel, 0.05-0.3% nitrogen and up to 1% tungsten. These stainless steels may  
3427 be used in contact with corrosive foodstuffs as they have a very high resistance to corrosion caused  
3428 by, for example, saline solutions at high temperatures.

## 3429 **Composition limits**

3430 There are no universal composition limits for stainless steels used in food contact applications,  
3431 although there are legislative requirements in France, Italy and Greece. In France, stainless steels for  
3432 food contact products must contain at least 13% of chromium and can contain nickel and manganese.  
3433 Maximum limits are imposed for certain other alloying elements (4% for Mo, Ti, Al and Cu; 1% for Ta,  
3434 Nb and Zr). In Italy, there is a positive list of stainless steel grades for use as food contact materials.  
3435 These grades must pass metal release tests for corrosion in distilled water, olive oil, an aqueous  
3436 solution of ethanol and 3% acetic acid in water, under specified conditions. New grades can be added  
3437 to the positive list following appropriate testing. In Greece, stainless steels for food contact products  
3438 must contain at least 12% (w/w) of chromium. Maximum limits are imposed for certain other alloying  
3439 elements (4% for Mo, Ti, Al and Cu; 1% for Ta, Nb and Zr; 0.5% for Pb; 0.05% for Cd and 0.05% for As).  
3440 In the UK, there are numerous specifications for a wide range of food contact applications for stainless  
3441 steels. Other countries also have similar regulations. References to some of the Italian, French, UK and  
3442 German legislation/standards (e.g. DIN 18 865 and DIN 18 866) are given below.

3443 In addition, there are European and International standards for certain types of application of stainless  
3444 steels. The composition limits for stainless steel for table cutlery (knives, forks, spoons, carving sets,  
3445 ladles, children's cutlery and other serving utensils) are specified in EN ISO 8442-2; specified  
3446 compositions are linked to the application of the table cutlery.

3447 Compositional information on some other grades of stainless steels used in food contact applications  
3448 can be found in Outokumpu Stainless Corrosion Handbook (Outokumpu Stainless Corrosion Handbook  
3449 11th edition 2015).

#### 3450 **Stainless steels used in contact with food**

3451 The following food contact applications often use stainless steels:

3452 i. Containers for storage and transportation e.g. milk trucks, wine tanks.

3453 ii. Processing equipment used in industrial plants e.g. processing of fruit and vegetables, dry foods  
3454 such as cereals, flour, sugar; fish processing; brew kettles and beer kegs, utensils such as blenders and  
3455 bread-dough mixers.

3456 iii. Processing equipment, as well as many fittings in catering facilities such as restaurants, hospitals  
3457 and in industrial kitchens.

3458 iv. Slaughterhouse equipment.

3459 v. Household equipment e.g. electric kettles, cookware, kitchen fittings (sinks, counters and drains) as  
3460 well as bowls, knives, spoons and forks.

3461 A wide range of stainless steels are highly resistant to corrosion in acetic acid (concentration range 1-  
3462 20%) at temperatures up to boiling point (Outokumpu Stainless Corrosion Handbook, 11th edition  
3463 2015). Similar corrosion resistance is seen for beer, citric acid (up to 5%), coffee, fruit juices, wines,  
3464 lactic acid, milk and various detergents. It is well known that molybdenum improves the corrosion  
3465 resistance of stainless steels in contact with foods or fluids that contain chloride ions. In Italy, stainless  
3466 steels must meet certain release criteria in a variety of media before they can be approved for food  
3467 contact applications. The list of approved stainless steels includes the standard austenitic grades 304  
3468 (18% Cr, 10% Ni) and 316 (17% Cr, 12% Ni+Mo). In addition, some European standards (e.g. EN 631,  
3469 EN ISO 8442-2) specify the finish quality of the products and their ability to meet test criteria, which  
3470 minimises the likelihood of pitting or crevice corrosion occurring during the normal lifetime of the  
3471 product.

3472 In addition to corrosion resistance, grade selection for food applications must also include  
3473 consideration of durability, formability (e.g. deep drawing for pots and pans) and mechanical/physical  
3474 properties (e.g. ferromagnetism for induction heating applications). Users of the Guide are  
3475 recommended to seek expert advice on the selection of suitable stainless steel grades for their specific  
3476 food contact applications.

## 3477 Release

3478 Metal ion release from stainless steel is generally assumed to be a time dependent measure of metal  
3479 transition. Tests have shown that metal release from stainless steel decreases with time (Mazinian  
3480 et al., 2016). Further information on these processes can be obtained from the literature cited below.

3481 Preparation of foodstuffs such as rhubarb, sauerkraut and red wine sauce in brand new stainless steel  
3482 cooking pots may cause chemical changes of the stainless steel surface. These changes can be  
3483 regarded as the development of a protective layer that reduces further nickel release (Bünig-Pfaue et  
3484 al., 1999). The amount of nickel derived from food contact utensils in standard portions of various  
3485 corrosive foodstuffs is 0-0.008 mg (Flint and Packirisamy, 1995).

3486 The highest rates of chromium and nickel release from saucepans were observed in new saucepans at  
3487 first use (Flint and Packirisamy, 1997). Nickel and chromium release was tested with rhubarb, apricots,  
3488 lemon marmalade, tomato chutney and boiled potatoes. The average release of nickel was 0.21 mg/kg  
3489 for apricots and 0.14 mg/kg for rhubarb after the first cooking operation. After the fifth cooking  
3490 operation, the highest nickel release for apricots and rhubarb was reduced to approximately 0.06  
3491 mg/kg and 0.03 mg/kg, respectively. Correspondingly, the highest release of chromium after the fifth  
3492 cooking operation was 0.04 mg/kg and 0.04 mg/kg, respectively.

3493 Using boiling 5% acidic acid as a simulatant for 5 minutes in stainless steel pans, nickel release ranged  
3494 between 0.08 and 0.21 mg/kg (Kuligowski, 1992). A study of the levels of nickel and chromium found  
3495 in 11 habitual menus cooked in glass and stainless steel saucepans fall within or are close to the range  
3496 of nickel and chromium contents of these foods reported in the literature (Accominotti, 1998).

3497 A review on the metal release from stainless steel in biological environments including food is  
3498 available. (Hedberg et al, 2016)

## 3499 Safety aspects

3500 — No particular health concerns have been raised, in terms of excessive intakes of nickel or chromium,  
3501 by several studies of metal release in various media and of the uptake of metals by foods cooked in  
3502 stainless steel pans.

3503 — Special grades of stainless steels are available for use in applications (e.g. those involving contact  
3504 with relatively high levels of chloride ions) where particular corrosion resistance characteristics are  
3505 required.

3506 Compliance with specific release limits, as presented in these guidelines, will help to reduce health  
3507 risks that may arise from the use of certain stainless steels that are not well known or that have not  
3508 been individually tested.

## 3509 References

3510 Accominotti, M., Bost, M., Haudrechy, P., Mantout, B., Cunat, P.J., Comet, F., Mouterde, C., Plantard,  
3511 F., Chambon, P., Vallon, J.J., (1998). Contribution to chromium and nickel enrichment during cooking  
3512 of foods in stainless steel utensils. Contact Dermatitis. 38, p305-310

- 3513 Bünig-Pfaue, H., Strompen, C. (1999). Hinweise zur Gebrauchssicherheit von Edelstahlkochtöpfen –  
3514 Untersuchungen zum möglichen Nickel-Übergang aus Edelstahl in Kochgut. Forschungsbericht P246.  
3515 Der Studiengesellschaft Stahlanwendung e.V., Düsseldorf, zu beziehen von Verlag und  
3516 Vertriebsgesellschaft mbH, Postfach 10 51 27, D - 40042 Düsseldorf.
- 3517 Hygieneausführung.
- 3518 DIN 18 866:2003. Großküchengeräte - Heißumluftgeräte und Heißluftdämpfer - Anforderungen und  
3519 Prüfung.
- 3520 Lebensmitteln - Allgemeine Grundsätze.
- 3521 EN 631-1:1993. Materials and articles in contact with foodstuffs. Catering containers. Specification for  
3522 dimensions of containers.
- 3523 EN ISO 8442-1. European Standard. Materials and articles in contact with foodstuffs – cutlery and table  
3524 hollow-ware. Part 1: Requirements for cutlery for the preparation of food
- 3525 EN ISO 8442-2. European Standard. Materials and articles in contact with foodstuffs – cutlery and table  
3526 hollow-ware – Part 2. Requirements for stainless steel and silverplated cutlery.
- 3527 EN 10088-1:2014. Stainless steels - Part 1: List of stainless steels.
- 3528 EN 10088-2:2014. Stainless steels - Part 2: Technical delivery conditions for sheet/plate and strip of  
3529 corrosion resisting steels for general purposes.
- 3530 EN 10088-3:2014. Stainless steels - Part 3: Technical delivery conditions for semi-finished products,  
3531 bars, rods, wire, sections and bright products of corrosion resisting steels for general purposes.
- 3532 Eric Partington - Stainless Steel in the Food & Beverage Industry, First Edition Euro Inox, 2006. ISBN 2-  
3533 87997-142-x
- 3534 Flint, G.N., Packirisamy, S. (1995). Systemic nickel: the contribution made by stainless-steel cooking  
3535 utensils. Contact Dermatitis. 32 p. 218-224.
- 3536 Flint, G.N., Packirisamy, S. (1997). Purity of food cooked in stainless steel utensils. Food Additives and  
3537 Contaminants. 14(2), p. 115-126.
- 3538 Hedberg, Yolanda S.; Odnevall Wallinder, Inger, Metal release from stainless steel in biological  
3539 environments: A review; Biointerphases Vol. 11, 018901 (2016); <https://doi.org/10.1116/1.4934628>
- 3540 Kuligowski, J., Halperin, K.M., (1992). Stainless steel cookware as a significant source of nickel,  
3541 chromium, and iron. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology, 23 (2), p. 211-215.
- 3542 Mazinanian, N., Herting, G., Odnevall Wallinder, I. and Hedberg, Y. (2016). Metal Release and  
3543 Corrosion Resistance of Different Stainless Steel Grades in Simulated Food Contact. Corrosion. Vol. 72,  
3544 No. 6, 9. 775-790
- 3545 Olsson, C.-O.A., Landolt, D., Passive films on stainless steels\*/chemistry, structure and growth.  
3546 Electrochimica Acta 48 (2003) 1093\_/1104

3547 Outokumpu Stainless Corrosion Handbook, 11th edition 2015.

## 3548 **Bibliography**

3549 DIN 10528:2017. Lebensmittelhygiene - Anleitung für die Auswahl von Werkstoffen für den Kontakt  
3550 mit

3551 DIN 18 865-1:2003. Großküchengeräte - Ausgabeanlagen - Teil 1: Maße, Anforderungen, Prüfung

3552 DIN 18 865-2:2017. Großküchengeräte - Ausgabeanlagen - Teil 2: Warmausgaben, Anforderungen und  
3553 Prüfung.

3554 DIN 18 865-3:2003. Großküchengeräte - Ausgabeanlagen - Teil 3: Ausgabebetische (Neutralgeräte).

3555 DIN 18 865-4:2018. Großküchengeräte - Ausgabeanlagen - Teil 4: Aufbauten, beheizt oder unbeheizt  
3556 - Anforderungen und Prüfung.

3557 DIN 18 655-5:2003. Großküchengeräte - Ausgabeanlagen - Teil 5: Tabletrutschen.

3558 DIN 18 865-6:2003. Großküchengeräte - Ausgabeanlagen - Teil 6: Einbaustapelgeräte (beheizt oder  
3559 unbeheizt).

3560 DIN 18 865-7:2003. Großküchengeräte - Ausgabeanlagen - Teil 7: Kaltausgabegeräte (Kühlgeräte)

3561 DIN 18 865-8:2003. Großküchengeräte - Ausgabeanlagen - Teil 8: Aufbauten, gekühlt.

3562 DIN 18 865-9:1997. Großküchengeräte - Ausgabeanlagen - Teil 9: Schrankinnenräume in Standard-  
3563 und in

3564 BS 1746:1987. Specification for domestic pressure cookers

3565 BS 4825-1:1991+A2:2009. Stainless steel tubes and fittings for the food industry and other hygienic  
3566 applications. Specification for tubes.

3567 BS 4825-2:1991+A2:2009. Stainless steel tubes and fittings for the food industry and other hygienic  
3568 applications. Specification for bends and tees.

3569 BS 4825-3:1991+A2:2009. Stainless steel tubes and fittings for the food industry and other hygienic  
3570 applications. Specification for clamp type couplings.

3571 BS 4825-4:1991+A1:2009. Stainless steel tubes and fittings for the food industry and other hygienic  
3572 applications. Specification for threaded (IDF type) coupling.

3573 BS 4825-5:1991+A1:2009. Stainless steel tubes and fittings for the food industry and other hygienic  
3574 applications. Specification for recessed ring joint type couplings.

3575 BS 5577:1999. Specification for table cutlery with non-metallic handles

3576 French Decree of 13 January 1976 relatif aux matériaux et objets en acier inoxydable au contact des  
3577 denrées alimentaires (Journal officiel du 31 janvier 1976). Available (in French) at  
3578 <https://www.legifrance.gouv.fr/jorf/id/JORFTEXT000000637961>.

3579 Hygiene control of packaging, containers, tools, intended to come into contact with foodstuffs or with  
3580 substances for personal use. Official Gazette of the Italian Republic, 20 April 1973.

3581 NF A 36-711. Stainless steel intended for use in contact with foodstuffs, products and beverages for  
3582 human and animal consumption – 1/4/2002.

Draft for consultation

## **CHAPTER 3**

Draft for consultation

3583 **Chapter 3 - Release testing of food contact materials and**  
3584 **articles made from metals and alloys**

3585 Resolution CM/Res(2020)9 on the safety and quality of materials and articles for contact with food  
3586 establishes that compliance of the food contact materials and articles with the relevant provisions and  
3587 restrictions shall be verified by appropriate scientific methods (including modelling or worst-case  
3588 calculations) in accordance with Regulation (EU) No. 2017/625 or relevant national legislation.

3589 Furthermore, tests on release from the material or article into foodstuffs are carried out under the  
3590 conditions of manufacture, storage, distribution and normal/foreseeable use considered to be a  
3591 “reasonable worst-case” with respect to contact time, temperature and composition of the foodstuff. The  
3592 results of specific release testing obtained in food shall prevail over the results obtained in food simulants.

3593 **Criteria for the choice of test procedure**

3594 To assess compliance (see Calculation of specific release), the material or article must be tested for the  
3595 release of the relevant metals and impurities, either into foodstuffs or into food simulants, according to  
3596 the following criteria.

3597 **Testing release from materials and articles into foodstuffs**

3598 Release from metallic materials and articles into foodstuffs is influenced by the properties of the material,  
3599 the chemical and physical properties of the foodstuff, and ambient conditions such as thermal processing  
3600 of filled containers, storage time and temperature and residual oxygen after sealing.

3601 To verify the compliance of materials or articles with the relevant SRLs, actual foodstuffs are tested or  
3602 used in testing under actual conditions of application in the following cases:

3603 – when the material or article placed on the market is already in contact with food (e.g. canned  
3604 food, beer kegs, etc.) and as far as possible at end of shelf life.

3605 – when the material or article is not yet in contact with food, but the intended use for specified  
3606 foodstuff(s) or group(s) of foodstuffs is clearly indicated by the manufacturer or is undoubtedly recognised  
3607 (e.g. food processing utensils such as garlic presses, tea infusers, etc.).

3608 – when harsh physical conditions or abrasion are expected to be encountered under normal use  
3609 that cannot be reproduced when using liquid simulants (e.g. pepper mills, coffee grinders or other mills  
3610 for nuts, cereals etc.).

3611 – when the natural metal content of the foodstuffs is capable of significantly influencing the  
3612 analytical result. In this case, the choice of alternative representative foodstuffs must be scientifically  
3613 justified. The natural metal content of the foodstuff should be considered and reported with the analytical  
3614 result (see Natural metal content of the foodstuff).

## 3615            **Testing release from materials and articles into food** 3616 **simulants**

3617            Following from the guiding principles established by Resolution CM/Res(2020)9, food simulants are used  
3618 instead of foodstuffs when release testing in food is not feasible or not practical, as described below:

3619            –the material or article may come into contact with foodstuffs whose diversity cannot be included  
3620 in a particular category of food (e.g. kitchen utensils or other articles at end-use level).

3621            – the intended use for specified foodstuff(s) or group(s) of foodstuffs is not clearly indicated or  
3622 known.

3623            – the analysis is not technically possible or the specified foodstuff(s) or group(s) of foodstuffs are  
3624 not available.

3625            The food simulants and conditions of contact are selected in such a way that release is at least as high as  
3626 into food.

### 3627            **Articles for repeated use**

3628            For materials or articles not yet in contact with food (i.e. non-packaging applications) but intended to  
3629 come into repeated contact with foodstuffs, the release test(s) shall be carried out three times in  
3630 succession. Between tests, samples are treated as described under “Pre-treatment of materials and  
3631 articles”. Where these instructions apply only to the first use or where the instructions indicate that no  
3632 washing is required before or between uses, this must be taken into account.

3633            Compliance is established on the findings from the third test. This takes account of the passivation process  
3634 that some alloys or metals undergo.

3635            However, the sum of the results of the first and second tests should not exceed an exposure equivalent  
3636 to daily use for one week (i.e. seven times the SRL) according to the formula:

3637             $RESULT1^{st} \text{ test} + RESULT2^{nd} \text{ test} \leq 7 \times SRL.$

3638            This takes into account the overall acceptability of a food contact article.

3639            Care should be taken so that repeated use articles made from plated metals or alloys are produced in such  
3640 a way that the integrity of the plating is guaranteed throughout their lifetime. Such items should be  
3641 labeled with a warning that in case of any defect, they may no longer be safe for use.

3642            Articles for repeated use, like hot beverage appliances (e.g. coffee machines), should be tested after any  
3643 preparatory or cleaning steps (e.g. decalcification) stated within the corresponding instruction manual.

### 3644            **Remark:**

3645            *Where relevant physical changes occur in the test specimen only under the specified test conditions but*  
3646 *not under the worst foreseeable conditions of use of the material or article, the test must be adapted with*  
3647 *alternative conditions that do not lead to the physical changes but still reflect the worst foreseeable*  
3648 *conditions of use.*

- 3649 **Sampling of materials and articles**
- 3650 Sampling for analysis means taking an article, a material or an already packed food item in order to verify  
3651 its compliance with the established requirements, such as relevant SRLs.
- 3652 Sampling should be performed at all stages of the supply chain for food contact materials.
- 3653 A sampling strategy should be defined, which allows an appropriate and representative sample of the  
3654 production batch. The type, amount, size and characteristic properties of the sample should, as a  
3655 minimum, be specified.
- 3656 The number of test specimens sampled and the sample size must be sufficient to perform repeat analyses  
3657 and to confirm results in case of dispute.
- 3658 For each sampling effort, an appropriate sampling protocol form should be prepared, which must be  
3659 completed during the sampling exercise. In case of sampling for enforcement purposes replicate samples  
3660 should be taken for primary analysis, disputes (in which case, analyses should be repeated) and  
3661 confirmatory analyses (if results are challenged, analyses should be performed by different laboratories),  
3662 unless such a procedure conflicts with the rules of member states as regards the rights of the food  
3663 manufacturer.

3664 **Packaging materials** (e.g. cans)

- 3665 A sampling strategy should be developed in order to check batch compliance for packaging materials at  
3666 the manufacturing or distribution stage, which should be reflected in the supporting documentation of  
3667 any declaration of compliance. An example of sampling plan for this purpose is given in Table 1 and may  
3668 be applied. Different sampling plans can be used; however, they should not be seen as substitute for  
3669 effective process control (Commission Regulation (EC) No 2023/2006).

3670 **Table 1.** *Number of packages or units to be sampled, depending on the batch size.*

Number of packages or units in the batch	Number of packages or units to be sampled
1-59	at least 3
60-200	at least 5%
> 200	10

- 3671
- 3672 **Materials and articles other than packaging materials** (e.g. kitchen utensils)
- 3673 At least three replicated samples should be sampled.
- 3674 **Competent authorities/inspectorates**
- 3675 For market surveillance purposes (e.g. as part of a campaign), the number of samples and the sample size  
3676 may differ from the sampling plan referred to above.

## 3677 **Pre-treatment of materials and articles**

3678 Any instructions provided by the manufacturer with regard to pre-treatment of the test specimens, such  
3679 as cleaning, must be followed before release testing is performed.

3680 When washing is required and no detailed instructions are provided, test specimens should be washed  
3681 with dishwashing soap/detergent in water (pH 6-8.5, at a temperature of approximately 40 °C), then  
3682 rinsed with tap-water and finally with distilled water or water of similar quality. They should be left to  
3683 drain and dry. Any staining should be avoided. The surface to be tested must not be handled after  
3684 cleaning.

3685 During the sample preparation, modification of the physical properties of the surface of the food contact  
3686 material or article should be avoided, especially for metal-plated products.

## 3687 **Release testing into foodstuffs**

3688 Pre-treatment of materials and articles and handling between, where appropriate, is described under  
3689 “Pre-treatment of materials and articles”.

3690 If appropriate, test conditions may be selected using the times and temperatures set out under “Release  
3691 testing into food simulants”. However, these conditions for testing into food simulants could be  
3692 inappropriate for food (e.g. causing deterioration/alteration of the food). In such cases, the conditions of  
3693 worst foreseeable real use should be selected.

### 3694 **Selection of foodstuffs**

3695 The material or article to be tested shall be brought into contact with the intended foodstuff, if available.  
3696 Contact surface to volume ratio is important – whenever possible, tests should be performed with the  
3697 real surface to volume ratio.

3698 If no particular foodstuff has been indicated, a representative foodstuff should be selected, especially one  
3699 having an equivalent pH value and organic acid, salt, fat and alcohol content. The principle of reasonable  
3700 worst-case circumstances of use shall be applied. For example, testing should be carried out in the  
3701 presence of known corrosion accelerators, such as sulphur dioxide or nitrate, if these substances are  
3702 reasonably foreseeable to be present in the foodstuff and at levels close to their typical upper limits.

3703 Where applicable, the representative foodstuff will be specified in the supporting documentation of any  
3704 declaration of compliance and, if necessary, the initial concentration of the metal(s) before release  
3705 testing. This is to ensure that the tests can be reproduced, if necessary.

3706 *NOTE: Souci(1) (2016) provides Food Composition and Nutrition Tables that the reader may find helpful.*  
3707 *For example, this reference identifies foodstuffs with the highest concentrations of typical organic acids.*

### 3708 **Natural metal content of the foodstuff**

3709 There should be prior knowledge of the natural concentration of the metal(s) in the foodstuff to be tested.  
3710 Therefore, the metal concentration in the foodstuff needs to be measured before and after contact with  
3711 the metallic material or article. If available, information about the expected natural metal concentration

3712 and its variability (at least minimum – maximum values) in the foodstuff should be mentioned in the  
3713 supporting documentation of any declaration of compliance.

3714 **Testing of packaging materials**

3715 Processing and packaging conditions\*

3716 When checking compliance, test conditions should be as close as possible to actual processing and  
3717 packaging conditions to avoid an over- or under-estimation of metal release. The presence of oxygen  
3718 during the test, for example, may increase the release of iron and tin from tinfoil cans or of aluminium  
3719 from aluminium containers. Metal containers must be hermetically sealed (i.e. closed in such a way that  
3720 air is prevented from entering or leaving the enclosure).

3721 If a vacuum is created in the container after sealing under actual packaging conditions, an equivalent  
3722 vacuum should also be created in the test packaging.

3723 If hot foodstuffs are packed into containers under industrial packaging conditions, then this should also  
3724 be carried out for testing purposes.

3725 Storage conditions\*

3726 Most hermetically closed metal containers for foodstuffs are used for products with long shelf-lives that  
3727 may, in some cases, extend up to 5 years.

3728 It is likely that the release of metals due to interactions between foodstuffs and the food contact surface  
3729 of metal containers will continue throughout the shelf-life of the product. The increase in the  
3730 concentration of metals in packed foodstuffs may not be linear in all cases. Therefore, it is not possible to  
3731 accurately predict the concentration of the metal at the end of the shelf-life based on measurements  
3732 taken only after storage for a short time.

3733 Consequently, it is advisable to store the test specimens under actual storage conditions for its entire  
3734 shelf-life.

3735 If rapid test results are needed, metal release can be accelerated by using more challenging storage  
3736 conditions, for example, higher temperatures, regular shaking of the container, or alternating between  
3737 hot and cold storage. The extrapolation of these data must be justified by comparison with data obtained  
3738 under normal conditions. For example, after verification of their applicability (scientifically validated), the  
3739 contact time and temperature tables reported in Regulation (EU) No 10/2011, Annex V, could be used.

3740 The information on any accelerated testing must be mentioned in the supporting documentation of any  
3741 declarations of compliance.

---

\* These conditions may be suitable for manufacturers, while competent authorities may not be able to replicate industrial conditions. Thus, comparison of their respective results may not be possible.

## 3742 Determination of metals in the foodstuff

3743 The metal concentration in the foodstuff can usually be determined using the same analytical methods as  
 3744 for the determination of metal concentrations in food simulants. Individual digestion conditions and  
 3745 particular measures to avoid matrix interferences may be required. In the case of any special sample  
 3746 treatment, a thorough description of instrumental conditions must be included in the test report.

## 3747 Test results and conclusions

3748 The release of a particular metal from a metallic food contact material or article (SR) into foodstuffs can  
 3749 be determined by subtracting the concentration of the element in the foodstuff before contact with the  
 3750 metal/alloy ( $C_0$ ) from the concentration of the element in the foodstuff after contact with the metal/alloy  
 3751 ( $C_1$ ):

3752  $SR = C_1 - C_0$  expressed in [mg Me/kg food] or in [mg Me/dm<sup>2</sup>].

3753 **Release testing into food simulants**3754 **Food simulants**

3755 As it is not always possible to test release from food contact materials and articles into actual foodstuffs,  
 3756 food simulants have been introduced that share certain characteristics with one or more food types. In  
 3757 practice, various mixtures of food types are possible, for instance fatty and aqueous foods.

3758 Taking into account sound scientific knowledge, tests conducted in the context of this Technical Document  
 3759 and the principle of reasonable worst-case conditions of use, testing on the following food simulants is  
 3760 recommended:

3761 **Table 2.** *Food types and food simulants.*

Type of food	Simulant
Aqueous or alcoholic or fatty food	Artificial tap water EN16889*
Acidic foods (pH ≤ 4.5)	Citric acid 0.5% (m/v)**

3762

3763 \* EN 16889:2016 Food hygiene(3) – Production and dispense of hot beverages from hot beverage  
 3764 appliances – Hygiene requirements, migration test. Approximate ion concentrations: calcium 16.4 mg/L,  
 3765 magnesium 3.3 mg/L, sodium 16 mg/L, hydrogen carbonate 44 mg/L, chloride 28.4 mg/L, sulphate 13  
 3766 mg/L and pH adjusted to 7.5 using 0.1M NaOH or 0.1M HNO<sub>3</sub>.

3767 \*\* Prepared by dissolving 5 g of citric acid monohydrate (CAS No. 5949-29-1) in distilled water and diluting  
 3768 to final volume of 1 L.

3769 Any other food simulant, considered to be more suitable for testing, can be used provided that its use is  
 3770 either based on scientific data or verified by appropriate experimentation.

3771 Distilled water at the same temperature as the test material should be added regularly during testing to  
3772 replace the quantity of food simulant lost by evaporation.

3773 To cover (close) a receptacle when it has no lid, an appropriate covering (e.g. fluoroplastic film) may be  
3774 placed on top. Containers that have a cover should be closed as under actual conditions.

3775 **Articles that can be filled**

3776 Kitchenware articles and other articles that can be filled (e.g. cans) should be filled with the food simulant  
3777 to approximately  $\frac{2}{3}$  total capacity and then suitably covered to reduce evaporation. The same volume (or  
3778 mass) of food or simulant must be used for replicate analysis and this volume (or mass) must be reported.

3779 A distinction between use at ambient temperature, cold fill (e.g. for salads) and uses that include hot fills  
3780 or boiling liquids should be made.

3781 Kitchenware should be tested under actual conditions of use (temperature, time, volume or mass) or by  
3782 applying the test conditions as specified in the JRC Guidelines on testing conditions for kitchenware  
3783 articles in contact with foodstuffs(2). The temperature refers to the temperature of the simulant at the  
3784 surface in contact with the article.

3785 Articles other than kitchenware should be also tested under actual conditions of use; however, if not  
3786 practical (e.g. 2 years at room temperature for cans or even longer time), other testing conditions can be  
3787 used after describing the rationale behind the selection of the testing conditions.

3788 Due to practical limitations, these conditions do not apply to large volume equipment such as pipes and  
3789 tanks.

3790 **Articles that cannot be filled**

3791 **A. Articles that cannot be filled and for which it is impractical to estimate the ratio of surface area**  
3792 **to the amount of foodstuff in contact with it**

3793 *Test conditions* for articles including cutlery and cooking utensils such as colanders, potato mashers and  
3794 cheese graters:

3795 The article should be tested, intact, by immersion to a reasonable depth reflecting normal use of the  
3796 article (see Annex I for a detailed procedure).

3797 For the purpose of the test, contact times and temperatures should reproduce the intended and worst  
3798 foreseeable conditions of use of the material or article (see JRC Guidelines on testing conditions(2)).

3799 **B. Materials and articles at the end-use level that cannot be filled other than A such as baking**  
3800 **sheets, foils**

3801 This applies to materials and articles such as aluminium foil (e.g. chocolate bar wrapped in aluminium  
3802 foil), cutting boards, kitchen sinks with draining boards and kitchen countertops.

3803 Either the entire article or a test specimen of it can be tested by immersion of the relevant surfaces  
3804 intended for contact with food. In the latter case, the total area of the test specimen should be at least 1  
3805 dm<sup>2</sup>, determined with a measurement precision of 1 mm for each side. Only the food contact surface is

3806 taken into account when determining the specific release value. The areas of cut edges are taken into  
3807 account only if their thickness exceeds 2 mm.

3808 As an alternative to testing by immersion, a test cell can be used for samples of flat (non fillable) articles.  
3809 The sample is mounted to the test cell with the food contact surface facing towards the foodstuff or food  
3810 simulant.

3811 Testing conditions should be selected as described above for articles that can be filled.

3812 Test cells can be used if the applicable test conditions as described in the JRC guideline are met (2).

3813 Test cells should be as close as possible to being inert with respect to the applied foodstuffs or food  
3814 simulants. A blank test must be performed in order to measure a potential release of metals caused by  
3815 the test cell itself. In the blank configuration, an inert sheet that does not release any metals should be  
3816 used in the place of the sample. The results of the blank test have to be subtracted from the results of  
3817 release tests with sample material.

3818 Edge preparation for stainless steel articles:

3819 The procedure for preparing the edges of stainless steel test specimens which have been cut from larger  
3820 surfaces or articles involves appropriate polishing. For example, the stainless steel surface may be  
3821 polished under water using SiC 1200 paper to round off the edges without damaging the adjacent surface.  
3822 After polishing, the article must be washed with special care so that no contaminants (such as metal  
3823 particles) are left on the surface of the sample. Finally, the sample should be left for at least 24 hours in a  
3824 clean and dry area so that the passive layer can re-form naturally.

3825 *Test conditions:*

3826 The Guidelines issued by the JRC on testing conditions for kitchenware articles<sup>(2)</sup> specify the testing time  
3827 and temperature for a wide variety of kitchenware articles. For example:

3828 – For cutting boards, short-term contact with hot foodstuffs is assumed. Therefore, the test should  
3829 be performed for 2 hours at 70 °C.

3830 – For articles such as counter-tops, where ambient temperature long-term contact is assumed,  
3831 testing conditions should be 10 days at 40 °C.

3832 – For articles such as baking foil, the testing conditions should be 2 hours at 100 °C.

### 3833 **C. Food processing appliances**

3834 This applies to articles such as coffee makers, juicers, dispensing equipment, electric kettles and meat  
3835 mincers, as well as accessories.

3836 *Test conditions:*

3837 The articles (or their component parts reasonably likely to be in contact with food) should be tested under  
3838 conditions of use according to the instructions of the manufacturers.

3839 For hot beverage appliances, testing should be performed in accordance with EN 16889(3)

## 3840 **Methods of analysis**

3841 Methods of analysis used for release testing of food contact materials and articles must comply with the  
3842 provisions of Annex III (Characterisation of methods of analysis) of Regulation (EU) 2017/625. Laboratories  
3843 performing analysis must use validated methods for the determination of metals and other elements  
3844 according to the guidelines and criteria specifically set out by the EURL-NRL FCM Network (EUR 24105(5),  
3845 2009), as revised.

### 3846 **Scope**

3847 The methods for the determination of elements released from metals and alloys into foodstuffs and  
3848 simulants.

### 3849 **Principle**

3850 The concentration of an element in a foodstuff or food simulant is determined by an instrumental method  
3851 of analysis that fulfils the performance criteria described below.

### 3852 **Homogenisation and digestion of food samples**

3853 Food samples should be homogenised and digested with mineral acid using an appropriate method, while  
3854 avoiding any contamination or loss of material.

3855 When removing foodstuff from articles, abrasion of the tested surfaces must be avoided, and only non-  
3856 metal household utensils (plastic spoon, wooden scraper) should be used.

### 3857 **Preparation of test specimens of materials or articles**

3858 See under “Pre-treatment of materials and articles”.

### 3859 **Quality of reagents:**

3860 All reagents and solvents must be of analytical quality, unless otherwise specified.

3861 Water must be distilled or distilled, deionised(4), or water of similar quality.

### 3862 **Quality and preparation of analytical equipment**

3863 Test vessels and storage containers made of low-density polyethylene disposable material or  
3864 quartz shall be used. High-density polyethylene (HDPE) is also acceptable, while polypropylene (PP) is  
3865 acceptable after verification.

3866 Fluoroplastics are recommended where necessary, but care should be taken when using  
3867 polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE), because of reported interactions with metals. Before using PTFE labware,  
3868 tests should verify that absorption of metals in their surface at the conditions applied is negligible.

3869 *NOTE: Quartz containers should always be used in preference to glass. If the use of glassware*  
3870 *cannot be avoided, it should be carefully decontaminated before use. Blank measurements should verify*  
3871 *effective decontamination.*

3872 All equipment used for the preparation and execution of immersion experiments should be acid  
3873 cleaned with 10% HNO<sub>3</sub> for a minimum of 24 h and then carefully rinsed with ultra-pure water before use  
3874 to minimise the risk of contamination of metals. Finally, the equipment must be dry when used.

#### 3875 **Instruments**

3876 *NOTE: Analytical instruments and equipment are specified only when necessary; otherwise,*  
3877 *standard laboratory equipment may be used.*

3878 Appropriate analytical methods should be employed, using instruments such as:

3879 – Flame Atomic Absorption Spectrophotometer (FAAS)

3880 – Graphite Furnace Atomic Absorption Spectrophotometer (GF-AAS)

3881 – Inductively coupled plasma atomic emission spectrometer (ICP-AES, ICP-OES)

3882 – Inductively Coupled Plasma Mass Spectrometer (ICP MS)

3883 Other methods may be used, such as polarography, specific electrodes, etc. providing that the  
3884 analytical performance described below are as far as possible achieved.

#### 3885 **Blank tests**

3886 A blank test must be performed to determine the initial concentration of the element in the  
3887 homogenised/digested foodstuff or simulant prior to contact with the material or article under study. A  
3888 blank test must be carried out for each series of tests.

#### 3889 **Analytical performance requirements**

3890 For the determination of metallic elements in foodstuffs or food simulants, laboratories must use  
3891 a validated analytical method that fulfils the performance criteria indicated below, whenever possible.

3892 The limit of detection is defined as the concentration of the element in the blank sample that gives  
3893 a signal equal to three times the background noise of the instrument.

3894 The limit of quantification is defined as the concentration of the element in the foodstuff or  
3895 simulant that gives a signal equal to six times the background noise of the instrument.

3896 As far as possible:

3897 1. Limit of detection (LOD) < 1/10 SRL

3898 2. Limit of quantification (LOQ) < 1/5 SRL

3899 3. Recovery rate from 80% to 120%

3900 4. The within-laboratory standard deviation for repeated analysis of a reference or fortified  
3901 material, under conditions of reproducibility (intermediate precision), should not exceed the level  
3902 calculated by the Horwitz Equation (see Table 3).

3903 **Table 3.** Predicted value for within-laboratory RSD, under conditions of reproducibility, depending  
3904 on concentration <sup>(5)</sup>

Analyte %	Analyte ratio	Unit	RSD (%) predicted
0.01	10-4	100 ppm	8.0
0.001	10-5	10 ppm	11.3
0.0001	10-6	1 ppm	16.0
0.00001	10-7	100 ppb	22.6

3905 5. Specificity: as far as possible free from matrix and spectral interferences

3906 The Guidelines for performance criteria and validation procedures of analytical methods used in controls  
3907 of food contact materials <sup>(5)</sup> should be taken into account.

## 3908 **Measurements and reporting**

3909 The analytical results for test specimens sampled (see Sampling of materials and articles) and tested for  
3910 release in a foodstuff or food simulant, with the measurements corrected for recovery, should be reported  
3911 in mg Me/kg or mg Me/dm<sup>2</sup>, with their expanded uncertainty and the analytical method.

3912 A test specimen can be considered compliant when the concentrations of any released elements (or the  
3913 average concentration, in the case of replicate instrumental measurements, of the same test specimen  
3914 solution after the release testing) do not exceed the corresponding SRLs, taking into account the expanded  
3915 uncertainty of the measurements (see Calculation of specific release).

3916 Usually, more than one specimen of the same sample are tested (see Sampling of materials and articles).  
3917 Only if all the test specimens of the sample are compliant, the sample is considered compliant.

3918 In case of single use materials or articles, the results after the first migration test are used for compliance  
3919 statement.

3920 In case of repeated use materials or articles, the results after the third migration test are used for  
3921 compliance statement. However, the sum of the results of the first and second migration tests should not  
3922 exceed seven times the SRL (see Articles for repeated use).

3923 For articles that cannot be filled and for which it is impractical to estimate the ratio of surface area to the  
3924 amount of foodstuff in contact with, the specific release is calculated according to the rules set in the  
3925 Annex I. The corresponding envelope volume must be reported.

3926 For articles that consist of separate parts (including accessories) and for which the ratio of surface area to  
3927 volume or amount of foodstuff in contact is not known for the assembled article, the total mass of any  
3928 given released element must be calculated for all the individual parts that come in contact with food.

3929 This total mass of released elements must be converted in mg/kg by taking into account the amount of  
3930 foodstuff coming into contact with the assembled article.

3931 *Examples: mincer / meat slicer / espresso machine*



3932  
3933 For silver or silver-plated cutlery, a reduction factor may be applied to the specific release of silver when  
3934 justified (see Annex II).

### 3935 **Calculation of specific release (SR)**

3936 When the foodstuff or food simulant used for the release test contains amounts of the element under  
3937 investigation (see “Natural metal content of the food”), the original metal content must be subtracted  
3938 from the result of the release test.

3939 
$$SR = C_1 - C_0$$

3940 where SR is the concentration of the element that is released from the metal or alloy into the  
3941 foodstuff/food simulant, expressed in [mg Me/kg food] or in [mg Me/dm<sup>2</sup>];

3942 C<sub>1</sub> is the concentration of the element in the foodstuff/food simulant after contact with the metal/alloy,  
3943 expressed in [mg Me/kg food] or in [mg Me/dm<sup>2</sup>]; and

3944 C<sub>0</sub> is the concentration of the element in the foodstuff/food simulant before contact with the metal/alloy,  
3945 expressed in [mg Me/kg food] or in [mg Me/dm<sup>2</sup>].

3946 Note: The measurement uncertainty of the release test result must be taken into account to assess  
3947 compliance.

#### 3948 **Example:**

3949 Assuming

3950 
$$C_0 = 2.0 \text{ mg Me/kg}, u(C_0) = 0.4 \text{ mg Me/kg}$$

3951 
$$C_1 = 8.0 \text{ mg Me/kg}, u(C_1) = 1.6 \text{ mg Me/kg}$$

3952 where, u(C<sub>1</sub>) and u(C<sub>0</sub>) are the respective standard measurement uncertainties, one gets:

3953  $SR = C_1 - C_0 = 8 - 2 = 6 \text{ mg Me/kg}$

3954  $U(SR) = 2 * \sqrt{u(C_1)^2 + u(C_0)^2} = 2 * \sqrt{0.4^2 + 1.6^2} = 3.3 \text{ mg Me/kg}$

3955 where, U(SR) is the expanded uncertainty, calculated using a coverage factor (k) of 2, and applying the  
3956 law of uncertainty propagation according to JCGM 100L2008 GUM 1995(a)

3957 The final result should be reported as **SR = 6.0 ± 3.3 (k=2) mg Me/kg.**

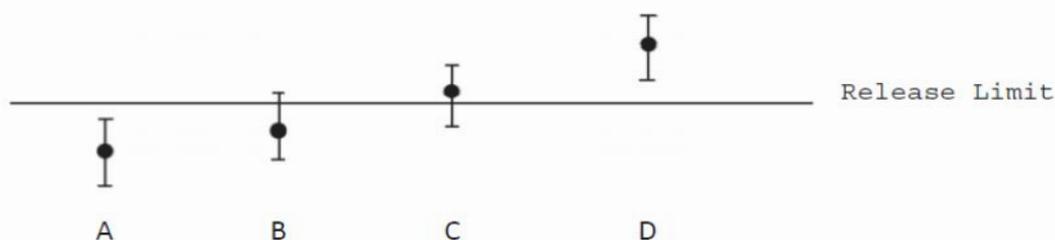
3958 This approach is applicable when  $C_0$  and  $C_1$  are expressed in mg Me/dm<sup>2</sup>. The final result should then be  
3959 multiplied (b) by “6” to obtain a result expressed in mg Me/kg.

3960 (a) BIPM, IEC, IFCC, ILAC, ISO, IUPAC, IUPAP, OIML (2008). Guide to the expression of uncertainty in  
3961 measurement, JCGM100:2008, GUM 1995 with minor corrections. BIPM (First edition September 2008).  
3962 Available from <https://www.bipm.org/>

3963 (b) Applicable for articles described in section “Materials and articles at the end-use level that cannot be  
3964 filled other than A such as baking sheets, foils”.

### 3965 **How to check compliance**

3966 The Eurachem guide(a) defines the four cases presented in the figure:



3967  
3968 (a) A. Williams and B. Magnusson (eds.) Eurachem/CITAC Guide: Use of uncertainty information in  
3969 compliance assessment (2nd ed. 2021), ISBN 978-0-948926-38-9 Available from [www.eurachem.org](http://www.eurachem.org)

3970 Case A represents a result that is beyond any reasonable doubt below the release limit SRL, ( $SR + U < SRL$ ),  
3971 hence the results would be considered as “compliant”.

3972 Similarly, case D represents a result that is beyond any reasonable doubt above the release limit SRL, ( $SR$   
3973  $- U > SRL$ ), hence the result would be considered as “non-compliant”.

3974 A case-by-case assessment is required for cases “B” and “C”, in order to judge whether the results comply  
3975 with the release limit value, taking into account the risks associated with making a wrong decision. The  
3976 conservative approach, meant to protect the consumer, would consider cases “B” and “C” as “non-  
3977 compliant”.

### 3978 **Calculating the SR for articles as defined in Annex I**

3979 The calculation is described in Annex I.

3980 **References**

3981 (1) Food Composition and Nutrition Tables SW Souci, W Fachmann, H Kraut. Wissenschaftliche  
3982 Verlagsgesellschaft mbH, Stuttgart 8th edition 2016.

3983 (2) Beldi G., Senaldi C., Robouch P. and Hoekstra E. (2021) Testing conditions for kitchenware  
3984 articles in contact with foodstuffs: Plastics, Metals, Silicone and Rubber. European Commission,  
3985 Ispra, JRC125894.

3986 (3) EN 16889 Food hygiene – Production and dispense of hot beverages from hot beverage  
3987 appliances – Hygiene requirements, migration test.

3988 (4) Deionised water R prepared by distillation with a resistivity of not less than 0.18 MΩ·m  
3989 determined at 25oC. Ph. Eur. 10th Edition, Strasbourg, France: Council of Europe; 2019.

3990 (5) Bratinova S., Raffael B., Simoneau C. (2009) Guidelines for performance criteria and validation  
3991 procedures of analytical methods used in controls of food contact materials EUR 24105 EN – 1st edition  
3992 2009. European Commission, Joint Research Centre, Institute for Health and Consumer Protection.

3993

3994 **Annex I: Methods for measurement of articles that cannot be**  
 3995 **filled**

3996 This annex describes a method for calculating the foreseeable mass of foodstuff in contact with articles  
 3997 of the section “Articles that cannot be filled and for which it is impractical to estimate the ratio of surface  
 3998 area to the amount of foodstuff in contact with it”, such as forks, brushes, etc.

3999 The measurement of the surface area of a utensil is complex and it is not objectively linked to the  
 4000 consumer’s exposure. The following method provides conventions to be used for a direct and simple  
 4001 calculation of the specific release in mg/kg as it relates to the consumer’s exposure. For each three-  
 4002 dimensional object, the lengths of its three dimensions (X = depth, Y = width, Z = height) are defined using  
 4003 a few simple conventions. This yields a rectangular box parallelepiped (simple geometric figure) enclosing  
 4004 the object called “envelope volume” which is used as a reference in the method for the amount of food  
 4005 that comes into contact with an article.

4006 This method deviates from the method currently described in the European Regulation (EU) No. 10/2011  
 4007 on plastic materials and it is proposed as more appropriate for a number of utensils whose surface area  
 4008 is not correlated with the amount of food in contact and therefore consumer exposure.

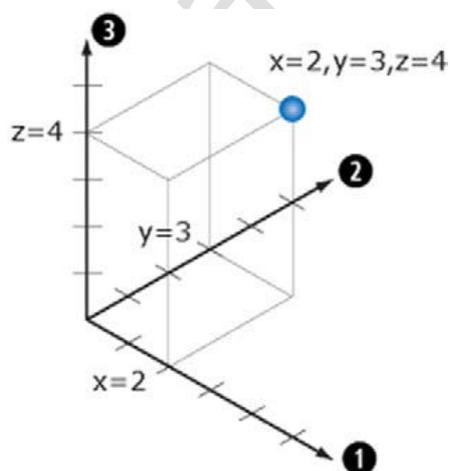
4009 **Measurements for the calculation of the envelope volume of the**  
 4010 **utensil**

4011 *In order not to drastically underestimate the contact volume for articles with small dimensions along one*  
 4012 *or more of the axes, the minimum value that can be assigned to each axis (X, Y and Z) is 5 cm. Each value*  
 4013 *below 5 cm will be rounded to 5 cm.*

4014 *Beyond the minimum value of 5 cm, the length of each axis shall be measured and expressed in increments*  
 4015 *of 1 mm.*

4016 Determination of dimensions along the axes X, Y and Z

4017



4018

4019 Diagram 1 illustrates the three-dimensional envelop volume, where the Z axis represents the height of  
 4020 the utensil, the X axis its depth and the Y axis its width (Y).

4021 Measure the value of the total height ( $H_{total}$ ) for the utensil using a gauge (e.g. Vernier calipers) with a  
 4022 precision of 1 mm. The height shall be established by measuring by in straight line along the centreline of  
 4023 the utensil, as illustrated below.

4024 **Remark:**

4025 *If it is not clear what points should be used to determine the height measurement, the utensil can be*  
 4026 *suspended (i.e. allowed to hang freely from the highest point of the handle and then lowered until it*  
 4027 *touches a horizontal surface e.g. a desktop). The height is then be measured from the highest point of the*  
 4028 *utensil perpendicular to the horizontal surface.*

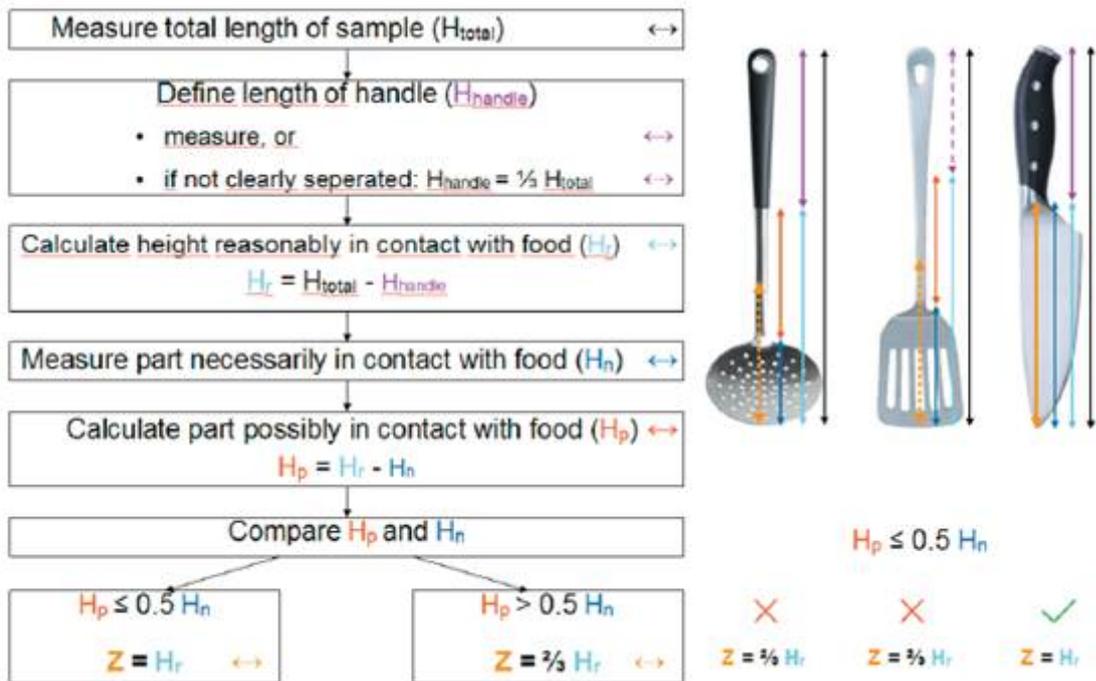
4029 *Then determine what portion to the total height ( $H_{total}$ ) for the utensil is assigned, respectively, to the*  
 4030 *handle ( $H_{handle}$ ) and to the part necessarily in contact with food ( $H_n$ ).*

4031 *Measure the length of the handle ( $H_{handle}$ ) using the gauge. If the handle is made of metal and it is not*  
 4032 *clearly separate from the rest of the article, it is assigned a default length of 1/3 of total height. Then*  
 4033 *measure the part necessarily in contact with food ( $H_n$ ).*

4034 *Afterwards measure the depth (along the X axis) and the width (along the Y axis) parallel to the horizontal*  
 4035 *surface using the same orientation of the utensil as described above.*

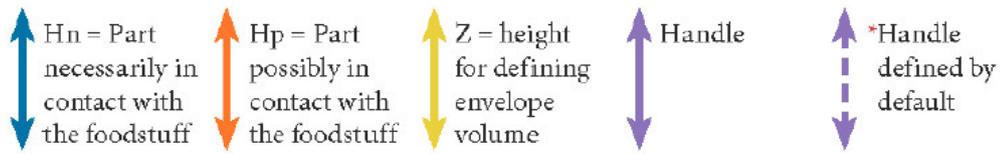
4036 Calculate the height (Z) of the utensil as shown in the following flow diagram defining the height (Z) of  
 4037 utensils:

4038



4039

*Legend for scheme of defining height of utensils next pages:*



① If  $H_p \leq 0,5 H_n$  →  $Z = H_r$

② If  $H_p > 0,5 H_n$  →  $Z = 2/3$  of  $H_r$

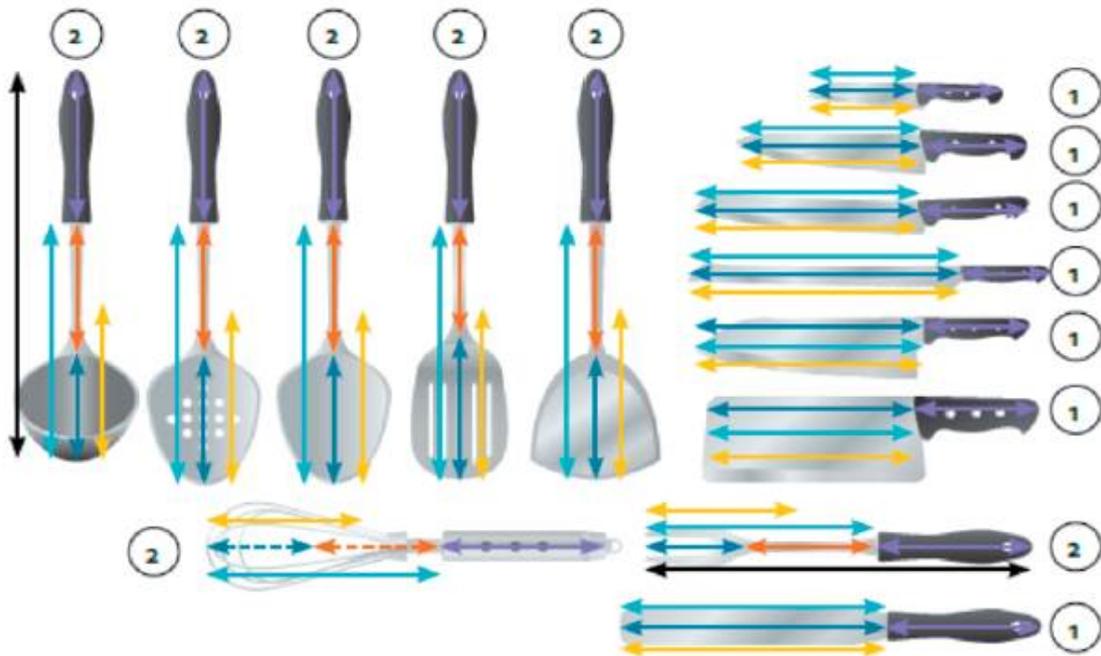


\* If the handle is made of metal and it is not clearly separate from the rest of the article, it is assigned a default length of 1/3 of total height.

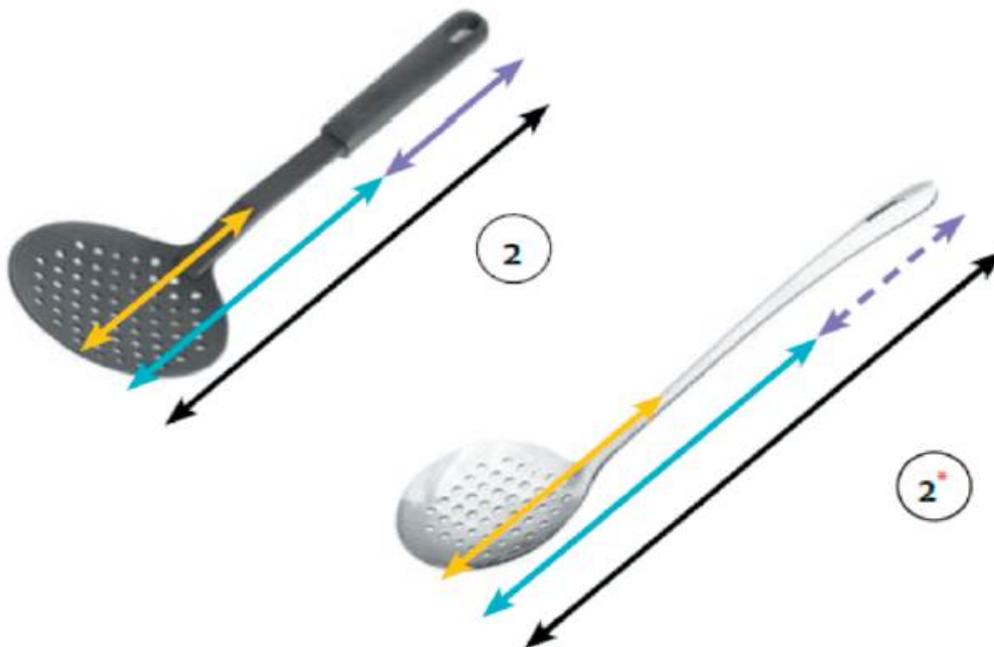
4040

Draft for consultation

### Scheme of defining height of utensils



4041



4042

4043 **Deviation from the aforementioned process**

4044 Articles that cannot be filled may have a shape or may be used in a way, which makes them unsuitable to  
4045 apply the aforementioned calculation process

4046 *Examples are depicted here*



4047  
 4048 In such cases an appropriate adaption of the calculation is necessary. This has to be mentioned in the  
 4049 report along with a justification of the deviation.

4050 **Calculation of the envelope volume**

4051 Once the rectangular box has been constructed, calculate the envelope volume as follows:

4052 Envelope volume =  $X \times Y \times Z$  (cm<sup>3</sup>)

4053 If any of the used values is below 5 cm it shall be rounded to 5 cm.

4054 **Determination of the reference mass (RW)**

4055 Determine the reference mass with respect to the envelope volume using the following formula:

4056  $RW$  (kg) = Envelope volume (cm<sup>3</sup>) /1000

4057 **Examples:**

4058 – potato masher:  $16.0 \times 9.5 \times 8.7 = 1322 \rightarrow$  reference mass = 1.322 kg

4059 – skimmer:  $5 \times 14.2 \times 18.0 = 1278 \rightarrow$  reference mass = 1.278 kg

4060 – small ice cream scoop:  $5 \times 5 \times 12.8 = 320 \rightarrow$  reference mass = 0.320 kg

4061 **Determination of the released mass of a specific element**

4062 Immerse the article up to the height of Z in a known volume of food simulant at the temperature  
 4063 and for the duration recommended in Chapter 3.

4064 This volume is not necessarily the same as the envelope volume. It may be larger (depending on  
 4065 availability of glassware sizes) or smaller (to maximise the concentration and therefore reduce the  
 4066 practical limit of detection) for reasons of laboratory practice. Nevertheless, whenever possible, large  
 4067 volume deviations should be avoided. If in the experimental set-up the simulant does not cover the  
 4068 article’s surface up to the level of the calculated Z, appropriate considerations should allow to add to the  
 4069 release the relative contribution from the handle (if made of the same material).

4070 Once the specific element has been released and its concentration in the food simulant has been  
 4071 measured, calculate the released mass of the specific element.

4072 Released mass (M) =  $V \times C$

4073 where, V is the volume of simulant used, expressed in L

4074 C is the concentration of the element in the food simulant after contact with the metal/alloy, expressed  
4075 in [mg Me/L].

#### 4076 **Determination of the specific release**

4077 As a general rule:  $SR = M/RW$

4078 where, SR is the concentration of the element that is released from the metal or alloy into the food  
4079 simulant, expressed in [mg Me/kg food simulant].

Draft for consultation

4080 **Annex II: Correction factor applied when comparing release**  
4081 **test results for cutlery made from silver or silver-plated**  
4082 **cutlery with release limits for silver**

4083 Recent data from official control laboratories have shown that the release of silver ions from cutlery  
4084 made from silver or silver-plated cutlery tested with citric acid under conditions for hot use (FSI/CAH1  
4085 of the JRC Guideline<sup>7</sup>) may exceed the release limit set for silver. Furthermore, testing under these  
4086 conditions does not adequately represent real use conditions and consumer exposure.

4087 After considering the following arguments:

4088 a) The analysis of silver in real food is challenging and often error-prone, possibly leading to  
4089 results that underestimate the release. This may account for the absence, up to the present  
4090 time, of any reliable comparison between silver release into food simulants and into real food.  
4091 Therefore, it seems more appropriate to test with citric acid as a simulant. However, as tests  
4092 using citric acid simulant at high temperatures tend to overestimate (based on available data)  
4093 the release of silver ions from silver compared to worst foreseeable real use, the test result  
4094 may have to be corrected.

4095 b) Hot served acidic food represents only a small fraction of the daily food consumption. Even  
4096 though there are no reliable data available on the consumption of hot acidic food with cutlery,  
4097 it is safe to assume, that the amount of that particular type of food is less than the overall  
4098 food consumption.

4099 c) Cutlery made of silver is rare and precious and, therefore, predominantly reserved for use  
4100 on special occasions - a period ranging from a few special or red-letter days (celebrations,  
4101 holidays) per year to once or twice a week (e. g. on the weekend). A factor derived from this  
4102 timeframe could vary from 3.5 (a weekend, twice a week), or 7 (once a week) to as high as  
4103 365 (use only once a year). Taking into consideration only the highest possible frequencies of  
4104 use (e.g. once or twice a week) an average factor of 5 would result.

4105 d) The WHO considered 0.39 mg/person/day as the NOAEL, which was also taken into  
4106 consideration by EFSA. The SRL for silver was derived based on intake data using criterion 3 (i)  
4107 of the criteria for establishing SRLs, leading to an SRL of 0.08 mg/kg (which would contribute  
4108 to 1/5<sup>th</sup> of the NOAEL). Considering new analytical data for cutlery which indicate that it is not  
4109 in every case feasible to comply with the limit set and therefore, it may be appropriate to take  
4110 technically feasible levels (ALARA) into account. At the present time, only few data exist and,  
4111 until more reliable data exist, an SRL based on ALARA cannot be derived.

4112 It was concluded that a correction factor to be applied to the test results for cutlery made from silver  
4113 or silver-plated cutlery is justified.

---

<sup>7</sup> Beldi G., Senaldi C., Robouch P. and Hoekstra E. (2021) [Testing conditions for kitchenware articles in contact with foodstuffs: Plastics, Metals, Silicone and Rubber](#). European Commission, Ispra, JRC125894.

4114 Therefore:

4115 **For cutlery made from silver or silver-plated cutlery the specific release can be corrected by a factor.**

4116 **The correction factor is set to 5.**

4117 The correction factor shall be applied in accordance with the following rules.

4118 A correction is only applicable for the release of silver ions from cutlery made from silver or silver-  
4119 plated cutlery tested as in food serving implements for cold/ambient or hot use (FSI/CAH1) of the JRC  
4120 guideline with citric acid as simulant.

4121 For silver-plated cutlery the correction can only be applied to items that comply with the requirements  
4122 of international standard ISO 8442-28.

4123 The factor is only applicable to silver or silver-plated cutlery labelled in accordance with article 15 (1b)  
4124 of Regulation (EC) No 1935/2004, as not suitable for food preparation or cooking, and not for a daily  
4125 use. As an example the label could be: “This cutlery is intended for food serving and eating purposes,  
4126 not for cooking or food preparation. Due to specific characteristics of silver, it is recommended not to  
4127 use silver articles on a daily basis.”

4128 The release test results shall be divided by the correction factor prior to comparison with the release  
4129 limits.

---

<sup>8</sup> ISO 8442-2:1997-12, Materials and articles in contact with foodstuffs - Cutlery and table hollowware - Part 2: Requirements for stainless steel and silver-plated cutlery.